THE GRONTH AND TENDENCIES
OF

TSWANA POETRY

## by

ERNEST GEDUNEDI MOLOTO

Submitted in part fulfilment of the requirements for the degree of Doctor of Literature and Philosophy in the Faculty of Arts in the University of South Africa

## Promoter:

Prof, D. Ziervogel, M.A., D. Litt.

## Submitted:

30th November, 1970

I declare that this chesis is my own woxk, both in conception and execution.

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I wish to thank the Human Sciences Research Council for the financial grant which enabled me to undertalke research. Opinions and findings vemain my sole responstibility and must in no way be regarded as the view of the Research Council, but indeed the research would scarcely have been possible without the Council's generous aid.

Purthermore, I must thank Professor D. Ziervogel of the University of South Africa, my everpainstaking promoter, and tutor over a period of little more than a decade now, from the Honours to the doctoral level, for valued guidance and encouragement.

My thanks also go to helpexs in the field of reseaxch - men, women, children, teachers, chiefs, scholars and lay people, for kindly commoncating valuable excerpts of poetry to me and assisting me to interpret them. Sincere thanks also go to Mr J.A. Mpuru, B.A. (S.A.), as well as mir S.I. Matlapexg, both principal teachers in the sexvice of the Tswana Territorial Authority, who accompanied me on my long travels.

## COHTENTS

CHAPTER 1: PRIMTMARY COMCETS ..... pp.1-22
Par. Subheading Par. Nos.
Foremord ..... 1.1.1.-3
English Foetry ..... 1.2.1-3
Bantu Praise-poetry ..... 1.3.1-2
Gulu Poetry ..... 1.4.1-6
Sotho Poetry ..... 1.5.1-5
Morthern Sotho Poetry ..... 1.6.1-4.
Southerry Sotho Poetry ..... 1.7.1-5
Tswans Poetry ..... 1.8.1-4
Earlier Tswana writings andcriticism$1.9 .1-5$
The purpose of this invesm
tigation ..... 1.10.1-4
Method of this Project ..... 1.11.1-3
Recapitulation ..... 1.12.2-5
CHAPTER 2: INDIGENOTS 1 GOETRY OTHER PHAN
HISTORICAL ..... $23-55$
Premise ..... 2.1.1-2
Poems of natural phenomena Segokyo sa borwe ..... $2.2 .1-3$
Praise-words : balance, imagery ..... $2 \cdot 3 \cdot 1-6$
Variation, and yet moxe imagery ..... $2.4 .1-2$
Metrical Tendeacy ..... 2.5.1-r
Alliteration ..... 2.6.1-2
Poems on cultural subjects ... 2.7.1
Bojalwa ..... $2.7 .2-9$
Divining Bones ..... 2.8.1-2
Moraro ..... 2.8.3-12
Dimatla ..... $2.9 .1-6$
Mpherefere ..... 2.10.1-5
Thwegodime ..... 2.11.1--3
Recapitulation ..... 2.12.1-8
CHAPTER 3: TMOIGQOUS 'POME' UITH AN HIGRORICAL TENOR, SUD INDLGENOUS BONG ..... 116
Man as the subject of
'Poetry' ..................... 3.2. 3. ${ }^{1} 4$
Motivetion ..... 3.2.1-2
Colour Consciounness ..... 3.3.1-3
Govereichty ..... 3.4.1-3
Tribal aggrondizement ..... 3.5.1-27
Intertribad omulation ..... 3.6.1-1.0
Intermacial contact ..... 3.7.1-9
satixe ..... 3.8.1-15
Bone ..... 3.9.1.-12
Foxm : Verse, Stanza ..... 3.10.1-12
Conclusion ..... 3.11.1-2
 ..... $117-174$
Pecent Survey ..... 4.1.1-2
diransition ..... $4.2 .1-3$
Probable linas of develop- ment ..... $4 \cdot 3 \cdot 1-6$
Wicha Kgasi ..... 4.4.2-9
P.P. Leseyane ..... $4.5 .2 . .6$
M. G. Mokone ..... 4.6.1-7
F.F. Leseyme again ..... $4.5 .8-13$
Indigenous-modern publi- chtions of poetriy ..... 4.7.1-2
Gam S. Mafoyane ..... 4.8.1.-7
M.O.M. Seboni ..... 4.9.1-15Tukgetho, Kitchin,Kitchin . .................. 4.10.1-15
More on Fom ..... 4.11.1-5
CHAFPR 5: FCDERN MSWAMA FOETRY (Continued) ..... $175-223$
Tinal Stage ..... 5.1.1.-6
I.D. Raditladi ..... 5.2.1-18
S.A. Moroke ..... 5.3.1.9
G.C. Mothasedi ..... 5.4.1-15
Church Hymens ..... 5.5.1-9
Drama ..... 5.6.1-7
Resume ..... 5.7 .0
OAPMER 6: OOMCIJSOONS ..... DD. 224-234
Mabôkô ..... 5.1.1-111
Modenn TGwana Poetry ..... 6.2.1-5
Growth and ituture Trends ..... 6.3 .2 .5
BURTARY ..... 1p.235-238
BTBLIOGRAEMY ..... pp.239-246

## PRELIMINARY CONCEPTS

## Foreword

1.1.2. Studies in poetry have often been undertaken in various languages. Therefore the intention in this chapter is to note a few findings and viewpoints as a background to the present task.
1.1.2. We find it necessary, in order to examine Tswana 'poetry' - modern and traditional - in context, to examine briefly what previous scholars have found about other Bentu languages, and in a snall way, non-Bantu languages, since one cennot -
.... insien hoe 'n mens by die gebruik van voorkemis ken verbykom nie. (Cloete 1957, p. 62)
1.1.3. Since the composition of modern 'poetry' is of recent birth in Tswans, the urwritten traditional lore dominates. One therefore has not only previous studies in poetry in genexel to reckon with, but the traditionel lore as well. It must be collected fron berds who have recejved it from previous generations and meintained it orally, and it will be found to occupy quite s prominent place in this study.

## English Poetry

1.2.l. We learn that English poetry had humble beginnines, composed by humble people of humble calling such as Caedmon -
.... a rude herdsman to whom in vision was given the power of song. (Hopkins, Ch. 1)

This oceurred in the seventh century A.D. We are informed further that much of the poetry of this period -
.... affords much to the historian, the philologist, the antiquary, .... (Hopkins, Ch. 1)
and that native writing was non-existent.
1.2.2. Puch the same sort of situation could be depicted.
in respect of traditionel thswana 'poetry' : it is largely oral, and its provenance is disputed; much of it is of more value as history then as 'poetry'; its bards come from all walks of life, from herdsmen to noblemen. 1.2.3. Dealing with the origins of English prosody, George Saintsbury (p. 22) Informs us that although ancient bards created it (prosody), it was almost or quite unconsciousiy that they adopted it. This engenders a hope that we may find anciert Tswana bards having created poetry unknowing"y. This makes it therefore even more important to take a careful look at unwritten traditional literature first.

## Bentu Preise-Poetry

1.3.7. 'Bentu' refers to the Southern Bontu, viz. the Neuni, the Sotho, the Tsonge and the Vends. Studies (Lestrade 1962, p. 292) in their traditional, unwritten literature hove revealed that the literature is in prose and verse, which two divisions are not totally distinet. The verse is seen in various genres : didactic verse, verse lore, lyric and dramatic verse, song, and praisepoems. This certainly gives us a ready catalogue of what to look for and what to exemine. G.P. Lestrade points out
that the diperence between prose and verse in Bantu
Literatiare lies in spirit rether than form. And this seems to agree wi.th the popular view that poetry may be in verse, but neea not be.
1.3.2. If we use terms such as 'poetry', 'verse', 'versefoot' regarajng Tswan, there is no intention to claim that these are exact equivalents of their Western European counterparts. These terms must be viewed simply as an essential background wi thout which analysis would perhape be impossible. These tems have also been used in previous studies, and it would perhaps be helpful to continue in that strain. We mean to seek the poetry in Tswans literature, if any. We are not taking it for granted.

## Zulu Poetry

1.4.1. B.W. Vilakazi (f. lo7) is quite categorionl about
the existence of poetry in Zulu, sayine:

> The problem to be solved is whether izibongo can be concidered poetry. Personally I contend that they are poetry, becose in studying the language of their composition one does not fail to digcover a deep and genuine imagincitive tone, for the composer of izibongo apprehends experience, both in its intensity and its subtlety, and shows undeniable power of revealing unknown modes of being through his creation and association of images.

He finds verse in Zulu and defines it as -
$\ldots$.... breath-group of worda. (p. 112, line 6)
Like Lestrade, Vilakazi maintains that Zulu poetry relies more on spirit then on form. Vilakezi is not alone in judging poetry by its imeginative tone, its creation and association of images.

Another authority submits:
It is in whet they bring to their association with othor words, and what this association imparts to them, that the command and magic of worde are to be found. (Beeton, p. 19)
1.4.2. As was the case with Vilnkazi, our problem is whether similar claims can be rade on behale of Towana: is what the Tswena onll 'poetry' (mabsk8), indeed poetry? In this connection it will certainly be helpful to record what B.W. Vilakezi considers poetry to be. He finds that poetry should be charged with emotion, and says further that poetry must not persuede the mind by logic, but by appealing to emotion; it must be original, and finally rhythmical. As to the aspect of metre, he finds that Zuiu has none of these decorations. (p. 111 , line 7 from bottom)

We intend to investigete this matter in Tswana. 1.4.3. As if to contradict himself, yet with the intent of opening an enquiry, Vilakezi sterts with the notion that Bantu word-stems are mostly disyllabic, and finds that they are therefore anenable to deotylic metre. Bantu words: This should include Tswens words. An exanination of this statement is called for. In this connoction he finds that Zulv. metre is a matter of distribution of duretic elements over a verse, which vexse is usually divided into two balanced parts separated by a caesura. Usine the dot (.) to signify short, and the colon (:) to signify lengthened ayllables, he scans as follows for instance, using the dorible strokes to represent the caesura (p. 113, 5th verse of Zulu poen dealt with):

Ivimb, él izinkomo// namathole [it denies entrance to cows and their calves]

This shows that there are two lons syllables on either side of the caesura which help to balance the two sides and promote rhythm.
1.4.4. As regaras stenze form, Vilakazi says that the stanzs in troditional \%ulu poetry is determined by the poet's treatment of his subject-mater under separate headings, which govern the prose-writer in determining his paragraphs. Headings! These are discovered by the scholar only. The bard of yore never set out to make then. But he certiinly had definite thoughts which are discernible in his poetry. These and other such features sugest themselves as matters for investigetion in Tswans.
2.4.5. Finally, Vilakazi specifically disapproves of the term "praises"for Zulu poetry, and by fiplication for other Southern Bantu lencuages es well. Tswana scholars, foromost of whom are those of the Twand Language Committee of the Depertment of Bantu Bducation, believe that international texras should be retained in Tswane, with phonological adaptations, e.e. fonoloji, shekholojif for 'phonology' and 'psychology'. A time may come sooner or later when the Greek roots from which "poetry" dexives become adrated for Tswana use. "praise" has had its run and has served aseful purpose. That the praise motive is somewhat of an overriding factor in Bandu poetry, is the truth that enabled the term "praise" to survive.
1.4.6. Vilakazi is not alone in his beliefs regarding the poetic nature of praised. His stend is comparable to that of Trevor Cope who says in recent times (p. 25):

The Zulu proise-poems canot be dercribed as simple, however, nor as lacking in linguistic artiliciolity. Preise composition is consciously an sret there is a conscjous striving after literary effect and a conscious effort to attein a richer, a more evocntive, a more emotive, and a more memorable use of langage. The preisepoems exhibit all the characteristics of poetry.

Something is gradually crystellizing by which we cen test Tswana poetry.

## Sotino Poetry

1.5.1. Sotho comprises the three Southern Bantu cognete languages spoken mainly in Lesotho, in Botswana and Western and South Western Transvaal and the Morth Western Cape, and in Forthern and Eastern Tranavaal, and known as Southern Sotho, Tswans and wortherri Sotho respectively.
1.5.2. A scholer, urging the investigation of Bentu poetry generally, yet citing examples from this group, finds -

> baie onwait nie noodsaklik is, en dat dit selfs prosodiese tranlik is, dat die Bantoe-digkuns die gelyf an die van die Europese trie. wyse soort(Endemann, p. 379)

Fie coes on to sdmit the free (vryelik) use of a peculimr
 may also be compressed to sé 'mútige, to effect "amibragiese verematt". It eppears that Th. Endemann views such versefeet as he (Endemanm) eites as signaliner tendencies to poetic and metriog gmenability in Bantu Lenguage, which
can serve as sufficient reason for a fullymaedged investigation of Bontu poetry. And we agree with him. 1.5.3. The great velue of th. Indemann's contribution lies in his suggestion of a research method : the collection of all kinds and bulk of Bentu poetry .... wat hulle voortbestan nan die oorlewering en nie an die skrif te (anke hot nie... (p. 378),
thet is to asy, traditionsl poetry, and proverbs and figures of specch that have been treasured beonuse of linguistic excellence, as well as songs, modern (published) poetry, hyms and other verse lore for comparison with the treditional. An examination of copious exsmples should be undertaken. He warns seriously ( p . 379) :

Die blote toepassing var die beginsels verkry uit die studie van die digkuns van Kuropese tele op die bantoe-digkuns kan nie wetenskaplik verentwoord word nie.
2.5.4. In considering a method of investigation one could bring the method suggested above into association with that followea by B.W. Vilekazi, who says in his work quoted in 1.4.1 sbove (p. lil2):

For the sake of gtimulating wore seientific study and research work in Bentu poetry I have anclysed one poon in detail, and checked my resulte with enother poem of a different type
.... I discovered that a unit of poetry or verse in Zulu is a breath-group of words.

We learn agein thet a verse is a unit of poetry. We must
take another view into account too, thet -
The distinction between prose and verse is $a$ true one : poetry need not be in verse, and what is jin verse need not be poetry. But generally poetry is in verse, and the prose content in prose form. (Whittock p. 15)
1.5.5. We also learned from Th. Endeman above that the test of poetic or literary excellence is that poetry endures by orel trensmission, as if to underline that the goid test for the success of a social creation as a cultural contribution is that it shell be embraced by society as society's own. It appears more probeble thet much of the onduring unwritten traditional literature is a good cultural contribution, then it is certain that sone current written litereture, which depends on being whitten for ite endurence, is success.

## Northera Sotho Poetry

1.6.2. Of Noxtherm Sotho and related languages P.s. Groenewsld swys (p. 17) Be. dat die navorsine in verband met die vers-
ieer die Bantoetale van Suid-Afriks nog in
die kinderskone stan on dat die resultate
dervan in menige opsis onvolledig en versteg-
nies onverantwoord is. 1.6.2. F.S. Groenewald observes in Northern Sotho written poetry, that there are tendencies which are attributable to the influence of Western Europesh poetry. This we intend to examine in respect of Tswana. The question arises whether features such as rhyne, rhythm, metre, figure of speech, which are found in Europem poetry, do not ms well exist in traditional Bantu poetry, in some measure et lesst. We finds that the Northern Sotho verse is isolated by certitin boundaries, e.E. a word or word-group. Verse there is. We must try and find it and find its delimitetions in Tswana. Groenewald finds a range of verse techniques of which the verse is the most important since it
determines the form of the whole poem. Verses are divisible into corresponding verse-segments. Other members of the range of verse techniques are the stanza, the poem, the cycle, in that ascending order of magnitude. "Ke makes an exceedingly important point for testing poetry, that verse. form -

```
    .... binne die versreel sy beslag deur die kor-
    respondensie van versreelsegmente kry .....
                            (parr. 20 en 113 en 115)
```

This is rather important for an investigation of Tswana. 1.6.3. In the following Mewana segment, what units of correspondence are thore, for instence?
kè legapatshunyana ke legorosatshwana
[I an the looter of the white-faced cow, I am the captor of the black cow]

We imediately notice that the first person, singular, copulative formative ke is repeated. It opens a submission each time, therefore there are two submissions. The second kè could have been avoided as follows:

## kè Iegapatshunyana lé Iegorogatghwana

Immedietely the correspondence of verse-segments would have been lost because the lé (rand) differs tonetically too from the ke. In other words these units of correspondence of verse pay regerd to form as well as to tone. Then do they really correspond. Sentence construction works differently. In ordinary speech this line could also have been ke legapatshunyane ke mogorosatshwana or
ke sefapotshunyana ke mogomosatshwana
using differing class-prefixes lem/mo- and we-/mo- Quite
clearly also the diminutive suffix -ana is used as a link between the two segnents, and as a boundary for each of the two segments. The penult possesses length in either case, and sexves as a rhythr signal. It causes a pause at the end of the dimintitive segment. The diminutive suffix is elso a rhyme-forn, and in this respect glso an element of correspondence. It is a study of these corcesponding units and boundaries that determines the rbythm, the rhyme, and the balance, and that go to determine verse.
1.6.4. Going back to P.E. Groenewald, he finds that there is no end-rhyme in the Northern Sotho unwritten treditional literature, but plenty of attempts at it in the written Iiterature.

## Southern Sotho Poetry

l.7.1. In this language a large number of praises of heroes heve been collected (not composed), and published by Z.I. Mensoaela (Lithoko ....). In the intwoduction he reveals the actual motivation for poetical composition to record history.
1.7.2. Mangogela considers his poems a welcome token of the love of the nation for its kings, which love is shown by praising their deeds of heroism and uprightness. This should have a salutary influence on kinge in their conduct of gifairs and judgements. The intention is therefore not only to praise, but to suggest noble behaviour to the king and the nation, which nation atands to benerit immensely by showing its kings high regard. This tendency to.
associste all poetry with history and kings is oriticised by Vingrazi, who ssys (p. 123):

Primitive poetry, of course, has always been thought of in terms of iziboneo: but this view is wrong, for the iziboneo are but one Department of a great field of poetry.
Our view is that "praise" is to be viewed as a syneodoehe, naming the whole by noming the part. It includes all the poetry, nistorical and otherisise, therefore. Mangoaela goes on to state that the Besotho have always been a brave nation, often waring successfully ageinst the Nguni, the Griquas, the Whites. Justifjebly they are proud of their Mistory and perpetaate it in their kings' proises. As a result of their great girts of poetry, song, proverb and iaiom, they excel in elocution more than in material oultural oreations - an important lesson ior people who hope to go through this world of science by what they say only. Those who will appreciste his book, he says, are (p, v):
~.. berati ba puo eg Sesotho be histori ee Easotho, le bahlalefi bo ratang ho finlela mentsoe Ie mopo on Sesptho .a...
[... lovers of the Sesotho language, the history of the Basotho, and the men of leaming who want to resch out for the words and the structure of the Sesotho Ianguage ..]
1.7.3. Nangoale states frankly that the poems are not his composition, but collections from people of different standing, includine chiefs, so that this is a collection of traditional Iiterature.
1.7.1. Mengoela knew what he was doing in writing in lines/verses, and not in sentences and paragraphs. We
take a stanza from one of the poems as example ( $p .10$ ):
Phosholi Mokhachane Moen' a Morena Moshoeshoe Ntog ea Qethoane Ie Bakoenehi. Ie Ea Matelile.

1. Lau ea Mancolo Mor'a Mokhachane,
2. Fa Mandolo le Mangolonyane.
3. Ea Maralo tau e eme thoteng,
4. . ene sekoting, Marajemem,
5. Ebelaelaka lentsoe La 'mutla.
[Phosholi Molthachane
Younger brother of king Moshooshoe
War of Qethosne acainst Rebels, and the war of Matelile.
6. Lion of the Mangolo, son of Mokhachane,
7. Of the Mangolo and Mangolonyene,
8. The Lion of the Mangolo stands on the veld,
9. It stands in the hollow at Marejanene,
10. It worries about the word mutis (hare).]
1.7.5. By the tests we have learned so far, anits of correspondence and forms that are used os bounderies are noticoable in the lines, suggesting that the lines are verses. The spir⿻t is conveyed by the strong metaphor, and this pointo to traditional style. of importance is that there is a technique of composition which we do not propose to $g \circ$ into here. It, is not only the rhymes, linkings, varistione and balenced parts created by the Bantu poet thet constitute the mechanism of his poetry. It is not only his observation of phenonena and tact, but his fdeallsm, and his spirit; these rolled together into one present a real life character in jts agitations in few but precise words. Form and spirit constitute poetry, and in terms of this stanz, Southem Sotho 'poetry' too.

You are not wold of the king's angen at being oelled mututa (share), but the 'lion' is presented standing on the veld, grumbline, threatering ....

## Tewang Postry

1.8.J. Tewane has large untiapped resources of traditionsl, unwritten 'poetry'. Our estimate is that at Jeast asizable book each onn be compiled from most of our tribal capital villages, e.g. Serowe, Bethanie, Phokeng, Dinokena, Mochudi, Gaborone, Kanye, Mosetina, Mafikene, and so forth. In each of these and smaller villages one usuelly finds some man ox women renowned for knowledet of praises. It is an honour for such a persor to grace a sociel ococsion with his presence and to perform, be the occadion a wedding, an eduoational pageantry or an eventfu"l politiowl come-together. If the chief is involved, the bard ustualy adds lines to his componition remindine the chief that heving praised him, he expeots, reward in the form of a cow w
1.6.2. Oceasionslly one pirds a collection recorded by a school teacher for purposes of teaching at school or of publicetion. Such a collection is treasured and sume a tencher may become the communty's reference, especishy after his informants have either been forgotten or have dienopeared through nstural ceuses. We beve used no Waterial from this source or from other colinectore. We interviewed the barde ourselves, and there are many. 1. 6.3. Gnatohes of Tswane treditional 'poetry' are to be found in vxions sohool readers. The bigeset volume
is perhaps that of I. Schapera (Eraise-poems ....).
Schapera regards praise-poems as tradtionel, handed down by word of mouth, and common to all Bantu. He appears to agree with the view of Caselis, of recitals -
.... with vexg aremetic gestures, .... which
were not easy of comprehension, and which mpenced to be disstinguibhed from the ordinary discourse by the elevition of sentiment, powerful allipses, daring metaphors, and very sccentuated rhytha. (p. 4)

He finds that these praises are -
... poetical efiusions, inspired by the emotions of war or of the chase. (p. 4)
.2.E.4. Schapera makes pronouncements that ought to be recapitulated in order that they be used in judeing the materiel collected. Fe quotes for instance that (p. 15) -

There is no question sbout the abundence of poetry in the languate, but in its purely primitive form Setwana poetry has no prosody. There is ho question of rhyme or metre about it, nor that of division into atanzas. In fact I do not think that it would sevour the name 'poetry' if it had to be written in the form in which we find it in the primitive 'Wboko' (Praises, generaly of chiefs and heroer).

He attributes this view to P.O. Thema (The Txend of
Getswena Poetry - 1939, p. 44*). Schapera attributes the poetic features found in Bantu lancuages by Lestrade to Tswana as well, namely dynamic stress (metrical rhytho), parollolism, chiasmas and linking (p. 15).

[^0]
## Berlier Tswane writings end oriticism

1.9.1. We have in mind D.F. v.d. Merwe's Hurutshe Poems
(Bjbliography, I) with thirty-one items on animals, including birds, one item on natural phenomena, while items 33-3' inclusively bear on culturel creations, including acquisitions from Western culture such as the bioycle (Baesekele), and a final item on the irterracial contact situation. All were handed down orally.
1.9.2. Finelly we would like to refex to two artioles In the now defunct Tigewkloof magazine (Bibliography, I), which represent an important instalment of researoh into the subject of Tswana 'poetry'. D.M. Ramoshoana contributes under the tithe Sechuana Poetry. His criteria for poetry are an enthusiastio spirit to praise, so that one's fane ghould not suffer through want of good record, end raytbin. In relying on spirit he is one amongst mary. Fe uses the word 'verse' in the colloguial sense for what is also called a stenza. Fie therefore giver no attention to verse in the teohnical sense. Of rhyme he says -
... in praises of heroes and war-songs sung to celebrete an event, similar to those from which I quoted, rhythm and not rhyme, should be the rule .... ( $\mathrm{p} \cdot 22$ ). I should never advise any writer to rhyme epic poetry ( $\mathrm{p}, 23$ ).

This brines us to the important point that his article deals with evic poetry, praise-pooms only. Of these he is quite convinced that -

Sechuana epic poetry assumed an aspect which can be reasonably called refined poetry. (1.29)

Most of hie quotations were already more than a century
old, he claims, so thet he comes to the conclusion that when the pioneer missionaries of the Gospel axrived in Bouth Africe the Tswane -
.... had developed a type of poetry which was not at all despicable...... (p.22)

Romoshoana oredits one Ludorf with successful rhyming in hymns, but feels that Alfrod s. Shorp did just as well without rhyme, for ingtance in the anthem Modimo og boikanyo, depending only on rhythm.
2.9.3. This leade us to the second contribution under the title Eymes in Secwana by the Rev. A. Sandilands. [Orthographical inconsistencies (Sechuana/Seowana) speak for themselves]. Sandilands defines a hym as follows (p. 15):

A hym is a poem expressjng religious feeling, set to music suitable for singing in public worship.

It has stanzas, he says. A further pronouncement is:
A poem, or prose passage, set to a more elaborate and non-repeated musical setting, ig generally called an anther. (loc. cit.)

Hence our hymns and anthems are viewed as poetry. Discussing the 'Secwsma hymns' as translations from Bragish he contends (p. 26):

> In most cases the Secwana verses produced could not by any stretch of imagination be called poetry, of any sort. There is no scansion no mhythr, no rhyme-scheme (though that is of debatable value), end, far the most serious of all, the natural accentuation of the words is generally at vaniance with the musical accentuation of the tune they are sung to.

Pxanple -
Gpoken accentration : mōa o me u cogēle
Musicat accentuation : moéa oa mé u cōrele

The contribution of A. Sandilands is most valuable in proposing a specific test for musicel poetry. 1.9.4. Lest we do Ramoshoana injustice, let us conclude with an example from his quotations, to determine the styles of composition of treditional epic poetry found by him in Tswane ( $\mathrm{p}, 20$ ):

1. Ramocaladi eo neala sebata,
2. Eo o neadileng tau eaga mogoloe -
3. Eage Mokgalagadi a Boikanyo -
4. A re, "Pke ke tshoaela, kea ila,
5. Eteoa ke le mosimene oa kgosing".
[1. Remocaladi who declined abagt of prey,
6. Who declined the lion of his older -
7. (The lion) of Mokgalagadi of Boikanyo -
8. Saying, "I never tatre shares, it's taboo,
9. Whereas I sim a royal son".]

Here we find a systematic thematic development fron data to principle, data in the fixst three ljnes, ending up with a atandpoint: 'This I never do, as a royal son like my elder brother. I would xather go and kill a lion myself than accept shares'. The last two lines, conveying the principle, will invariably be best remembered, and of declained upon meeting Famogeladi or his descendants to greet or honour them. Our view is that the stages in themetic development consisting of data and generalisation are the basis of stangaic organisation. 1.9.5. Indeed there is no end-rhyme above, but the datalines are knit together by linking segments. These units of correspondence of the lines make them 'verses' as we Learnt earliex -
$\cdots \cdots$ on ngele
eo o ngedilene eage mogoloe
egta Mokgalagadi ....
We conclude thst tendenoies to verse structure are present in this quote of Remoshoana.

## The purpose of this Investixation

1.lo.l. The purpose of this investigetion is to assess the value of Tswana 'poetry' - its linguistic merit, its social function, its spirit, and its forms. Whilst much has been done as recorded above, and some scholars claim there is poetry in Iswana, there are those who seem to agree only partially. But even those who claim categom. rically thet there is poetry use far too little material to prove it conclusively, and seem to analyse their material only partially. The example above from the quotations of Remoshoana, which reveals tendencies to vergification - some of which tendencies he does not pnint out - is only one among many that make this attempt to make a further investigation necessary.
1.20.2. Since Tswane scholars do not associate, they heve no schools of thought that classify and systematize their efforts. We therefore intend to attempt to give a lead to opinion by examining the work of Tswana 'poets' and finding whet is traditional or modern. We cannot subscribe to the idea that everything published is modern, everythine unwritten and handed down orally gemservative. We intend to try and seek what can be learned from either trend. Oux task is therefore two-pronged :
to attempt a golution, if only partial, to the problem of whethen Thwan traditional maboko are poetry ox tend to bo, and why, and secondly to attempt to seek the exceltences of modern trends in Tewana poetry fon Iurthor developnent. //e therefore intend a critical apprectation of traditional and modern poetry.
1.10. 3 Mis is a fomidable task, at times found to be impossible on well.migh so. An authority contends Whe things that are most necessaxty and most worth having are imposible to define... in any analysis mich aths at 'explaining' the beaty of poetry, we ane to some extent trying to oxplain the inexplionble. (Boulton, p.l.)

Thererome one readily asoocjates onegelf with the fol-1owins sentinant -

As hiordie gutuie dirmels die verstan van die sedig probeer benader, so nou en dan probees on dit "uit the lê", dan word dit steeds gedoen net die voorbehoud, verontskuldifince en versweé Wolitivasio : die parafrase kan nooit volledig weob nie, lan nooit die gedig uitse" nie. Want as dit po was, was die poësie altyd 'n poteneielle stumeie prosa. (du plessis pp. 13-14)
1.10.4 There is a silver lining. One can always attempt to understand. Once more we note that a distinction is scen between poetry and prose. This aifresence between poetry and prose that is reasferted here fijls one with courage again. There is something to search for. Ramoshosna and others must have heard of it, grasped it, and gone searching for it. We propose to try too.

## Method of this project

J.ll. $\quad$ We intend to collect Tswane 'poetry' which has not been recorded so far as we know, from bards all ovor the riold, wich means chiefly from the gast. erm Rransvad to the Vosterm Transvaal, North West Cape and Botswane As far as possible these widl be recorded on tape for analysis as to thenes, spirit and form.
1.I.? Thexe is reason not just to accept that Meboko are such hjeh literary art or that modern compositions are all that modern. We shall sampe both brends. Ve shall analyse both and find what they rem veal. We chall assess the depth of thought and the diversity of forms and tochniques. A stimulating view has already been expressed in this regard by A. Sandilands, eaying:

> Lt does seen to the writer thet, in Tswana poetry is to master new fround of thought and life, it must devolop new forms. The traditiona' 'lebôko' is an extremely limited mediom, and cannot be impressed very $t$ in in such new service. Its course is already run. (Iekgetho, Kitchan 8 Kitchin, Jntroduction)
1.12.3 Traditional poetty is recorded in its dialectal forms, that is, it is not standarised orthographicaly as this magh affeet poetic construction. We imolime to the technical use of the tern 'verse' as referming to a line of poetry.

## Recapitulation

d.le.l A quick recapitulation of what we have learned from we criticisn of traditional poetry cited, if just to have it handy, seens advisable.

1. 12.2 Quantatively we have learnod that Bantu Languaces, incluaing fowna, have poetry, even "refined poetry", in virutue of its beine chared with enotion, With spirit, with force of words, with specific and penetrating utterance; we have learned that praisempoms have all the qualities of European poetry. We have also come across a thematic division into gemres epic poens (praises), lywic poms (songs), and so forth. We have learned that oral twaditional literature has enduned from generation to generation through the sheer fonce of its quality, through its deep and genuine imam ginative tone, and through inherent memorability.
2.12.3 On the mechanical side we have heard of and seen stanzas in traditional lewana praises. We have tead claims of the existence of stanza and verse in various Bantu languages. We have noted stanzaic development by the compession of data leading to a philosophy. We havo learned of digyllabic words in Zulu (wach ins also true of Tswana) that give Zulu an amenability to dactylic metre. mase tendencies to metre are perbaps present in most languages with large funds of disyllam bic worde, including Tswana. We have heard that it is
improbable that Bantu languages will make use of European prosodic systems, yet that praise-poetry is consciously an art. We have learmed of the utmost impontance of rbythm. We have witnessed the general deprew cation of tendencies towards ond-rhyme ox rinym gemerajly. But, even mone daatio is the contention that hyms translated from European languages are no poetry 'of any sort', because of the lact of scanston, and riyne-scheme. Bometimes the judgements are diametriCally contradictory, and so although tione is a verdict at thas stage that Bantu Lenguaee, and that iswana too, has poetry, we attempt to state the case of Tswana itm, selt once again. We have neand of spoken accentuation as opposed to sung aceontution, a matter calling for rurther testing. Te have had derintions of verse and stanza. We thorefore have a considerable volune of viewn on the form and spirit of Bantu, and Tswana, poetry. d.le. 4 We have deliberately drawn from Neuni and Sotho critice siace Botho and Nunt lanuages show a common 'spisit', e.G. praise for bravery and upright judecnent; and from both Southern Sotho and Northern Sotho, since the Botho group of Bantu languages has so much more in comon historically, culturally, and linguistically.
1.D. 5 And this brings us to what we have leamed from a cultural point of view. Culturaly, Bantu Poetry, and Tovana 'poetry' too, is en extremely important social inm stitution, with its subtle sugsestion of noble behaviour. But what is more, ite most important genie, the epic praise, fills the role of good histoxical 'record'.

## TNDIGEOUS 'POEMY' OTHER 'RIAM HIGTORTCAJ

## Premise

2.1.1 The 'pootry' we intend to ammine in this ane the next chapter is that which, as fan as is known, wes produced by the powan without outside literary inm fluences, as distinct from that which was composed under Weetern wapopan influencos Ve refer to the former as indigenous and to the latton as modern.
2.1.2 Ve atompt tro investigate the apiriti and Torms of thas thdimenous lore in order to be able to measure their influence on modern compositions, in any. The Tsward refer to this 'pootry' as mabokó (sing. lebolfo). Monmaly maboko are full of pratse for a person on andwal or other object. the concopt of praiso is ustally empressed by a word or phrase which is rem Fandod as the praise-woxd or praisemame. It may be a retaphor as we 3 aw in Bouthern Sotho in 1.7.4 above, where Thosholi fobhecinane is roferred to as tau ya Man neolo (Lion of the Mangolo); or an expression of heroism as ve fown in 1.6 .3 whene a hero refers to himGulf as legapatghunyana (looter of the whitemfaced cow), Legorosatghmana (captor of the black cow). We treat the poons according to themes.
'Poons' of natural Phenomena
Bogolsco sa borwa
2.2.1 Sis winters ago I chanced to moet a Iswana octosenarien fre the fransand Eushveld and to complain to him of the biting cold of the High Veld. With the utnost chontaneity and a glowing ountenence, he replied to on rather elaborated my romark thus:

1.     - e surokpo sa borwa, mantitolo
2. Ge se ke go ama motho a mesoga
3. E0 aga se lona malalathagong.
[1. It is the spicter of the south, mantitole (author of aostmotion)
4. it never touches a person who stantis off and goog
5. it usually bites those who end lytng in the grass]
2.2.2 This theme belonge to all time. It is nowoves, more ralovat to the Bantu of quite some seneram tions ago, who was not tho possessor of a permanent hone and learnea to know the elenente the bitter way traveling, glowing unden the sky, dying of cold. The sad emporionce is handod down with didoctic intent, and in artistic laguage: firstly paise-words, then a funther aatum, followed by a gonemalisation.
2.2.3 In Worthorn Sotho we found that it occurs in publication in a cortain form, but persists oraliv in a slighty dirforent form. The form we collected orally is as follows:
6. L'é serfokgo sa borwa, mrnantshêtȟhênênê
7. Sia se ke se loma motho a phologa
8. ge fela se loma madikolatihômo .
[1. It is the spider of the South, mantshetshe. nêne (sharp cutter)
9. it never bites a person who oscapes
10. it surely bites those whose heads' crowns sac]

We learned in Chaptex 1 that those mabôto are of merit which ondure orally and not by the force of the written word. We reckon those muct bo of groater merit still which persist orally in spite of a different form of theirs beimg publismed. (Lergothome p. 2le)

Praise-vords : balance, imagery
2.\%.1 In the Tswana vorsion, like the Northern Sotho one, there are two prajse-words, the second being appositional to the first. Whe first is the copluIative 'stem' of the copulative formative ke (it is); the te is hovever not repeated but understond before the appositional praise-word. There are two idens conveged, firstly the mane, segokgo sa borwa, seconaly the character of the pidan. The appositional praiseword calle up thoughts of action, of drama : the lightning speed with which cartain death js wrought, because it is deideophonic. It derives from the ideophone lito! which means 'strike clean-offi'. There is no telling. Wo aro confronted by drama. This technique of
omployine ideophonos or their derivatives is certainly an efrective instrument for concentrated, specific and pxecise uttencuco. Inantitole (lit. mother of destruction) says all that could have been said in a prose paracraph characterising tho spader. Since the finst praisemord states the habitation of the spider (Gouth), wo note a balance of ideas, viz. habitation and characterisation.
2.3.2 The balance of tho praise-words is conveyed also by the matching length of penultimate syllables. The Tswana word of more than one syllable usually has one of tho myllables made prominent by being longer thon the rest. Sho colon (:) is used hereunder to inm dicote those longer and tharefore more prominent syllables:
semo:ke bo:me mantito:io
2.3.3 Ir fast deckmation one who is uninitiated woule pabably only notice the length-boaring syllable that stands cocond hast in a wordroup or sortience, but this fosture inheres to overy second last sylumbe of avery hord and is clearly sonsed by those who are vensod in the languace. It as the kind of thing that the prosent author oxperienced in trying to learn an Andianta poen. The following lines of Eugenc Marais sounded like one long word ending with pyn:

Gk-dink-aan-hat-as-suster-sonnegkyn-want-wan-s-in-m-sidekger-kom-verdug-selfs-Gmant-enpgri.

It wes an agerimeo of note when it was eventually revealoz, with intent to reveal, that those lines axe in ract inmoic in their metrical structure. So it is with the rewan langage, being a tone language. Its hightored sylubleg aro more prominont than the low toned. Its lone gylablos are move prominent than the shont. Anong themselves these "peaks" of tone and longth are not always equally promiment, some oxten bem ing unoticeable, the second last sylable of a word or wond-group on sentence unually exceeding preceding Longthened syllables in prominence, e.g.

1re segolcco sa bo: rwa
maintito: 1e
Because of fast declamation the penultimete sylhable in bo: rwa 3 of leaser duration and prominence than thet in mantibosle. Nevertheless these two "peals" balance the two preise-words; and the fract of the firet "peak" being leaser than tha second, kaits the two segments into one verse. We shall nerex to this promincnce of one syljable in TEwana disyllabic or polysyllabio words as lerigth. It is these longth-boaing syllables that detemine the rhythmic balance of the word-groups. 2.3.4 We have submitted that some syllables may otand out through the agency of high tone. In the praise-vords above, this reature has an important role whone the highmtoned copulative formative ke (it is)
woula mean sonething different if low-toned, that is ke (I an). the grave accent maxk here denotes low tone. There is also a measure of hich tone on the final syllable of borwe (bo.rwa) occasioned by the fact that the mompene -rwa is a root morpheme. All these waculations go to make tho declanation what it is in meanins and form.
2.3.5 The ingery of the firgt praise-word is signilicant. Oux subject is a 'spider of the South'. One innediately realises that this camot be an ordinay spider since gidens are found in the North too, and so on. This is an apt croation - the metaphow that frost, which South of the Equator is found the Furber ono travole South, is apider. Misis is indeed givines to airy nothing a local habitation and a name.
2.3.6 Poetry must be original, and here originaliby seens attributuble to indigenous Trwana 'poetry'. In thie conaocion an authority says:

All. imaginabive whtere with sometring original. to commuicate create metaphors of varying demeos of complexity. (iarvey p. 1l)

Whis motophor (segokgo ea boxwa), and tho drama (mantitolo), constituto our first data : imaginative, balancod, rhythmic, and bearing the charactoristic "poaks" of dewand durebies and dmamics. -

Variation, sad wet more imagery
2.4.l Typicaliy, the noxt line immedately varies the system, giving the next datum without balanced
mats, as well as in negative tems. Indigenous maboke mast not be oriticised fon lack of a pexsistently uniContu system whereas they are intended to display a consistontly haniform technique. It is the oase of the ixcogularity whob is a regulaity. Tswana 'poetry' shoms the personal appoct of revening ita bard's resoumconviness in the creation of imaginative, expresw sive and memonble utterances of inermastible vaxiety. That is why it ofton hapens thet during a bardra lifetine only he of those who are his adherents may decham his compositions in public.
2.4.2 Wile line 2 is negative the third line as a positive statement of fact, a generalisation, again a variation uron the second. These two lines are contrasta. This even-ridening variation is the essence of a. pascionate diswlay of oratory, excellence in which apeedily eams the orator public recognition, and above all the reward of and fon hureateship. We have three lines in three distinct forms of expression, and therein lies the excollence of the non-prose diction of Thwar, the three lines being krit togethes by thought arrengenent into a thought-unit, which we view as the basis of stanzaic form* The metaphoric praise-nane seroligo sa borwa, the sramatic appositional nate mantitole, are mit into verse by dynaic and duretic features; the expansion of the characterisation by the negntive habitual fom, gase ke (it neven does), in commadistinction to the positive habitual, se aga; the pedicatos, se ame (it touches), and se lota (it bites);
are deliberate variations or word-pictures of the varied actions and attitudes in a drama, and convey the bardre apecial sifts of oratorical resourcefulness and inaginative power.

## Metrical tencency

2.5.1 We have ronerred to verse above with regerd to Iine 2 in particular. Wat of lines 2 and 3 ? What of all the linos in relation to each other? In other words, con we find foxal or extemal evidence of re. lationship anongst these linos in adation to the interain relationship evinced? Ve belove it is in this comection that Lestrade ( $1935, \mathrm{p} .4$ ) subnits as follows:

Boch lime of verse in made up of a number of groups of syllables, wich we shall here call nodes, reually three or four, each node conwainimg one stressed syllable and a varying number, usually two, three or foum, of thetressed sfildabes grouped aroun the stressed syllabje.

In toma or ont finding in 2.3 .2 above, we read the above quotation with the word 'Length' (mutatis mondis) whereven Lestrade mploys the tem 'stress', in oun mind.
2.5.2 The 'nodes' then, in our three lines are seen as iollows:

1. Fe seco: 5 go/ sa bo:rwa/mmantito:le/
2. as se:ke/ se auma/mo:tho / a rago:ga/
3. seasa / se lo:ma/ malaila/thage:nc/

In charecteristically speedy declamation the last two 'modes' of lines 2 and 3 are further compressed into one as follows:
/mothoaragosg/ Lnalalathage:ng/

It seens that in this excerpt, not necessarily in every othex, there is a largely corresponding number of 'nodes' In the three lines, and that the majority of 'nodes' are triayllabic, Bach 'mode' has it: length-bearing penuli. Therefore there are duretic and quantitative minta of comempondence in these lines, not only suggestirg that they may constitute verse, but also form mally a stanza.
2.5.3 In our view these 'modes' ane the embryo of the 'versewfoot', or are in fact tro the Tswana verse What the Enclish versemoot is to the English verace. We are seeling the tendencies of Trwana 'poetry' and Eeal that we have forms here which with further chiselling on polishing, can be developed into 'verse-feet' in the popular sense. We said in Chapter 1 , that verse is changoterised by units of cormespondence called verse-segnents, These verse-segments constitute a persistent undercarsiage of like patterns. The pattems are anenable to further chiselling into noanunifomity by tha arolusion of arpendable monphenes, or the coalesoence of like norphemes, to no detriment of sonse wa fintontion. The first line ror instance could nead poweotly unherstandebly as follows:
segokgo sa bonwa, mtitole [swider of the Bouth, destroy me]
'destroy me', ntitole, being its name still, and atiin atitole read as one syllable, making three trisyllabio leet'.
2.5.4 When then, we refer to metrical tendency we bean the arrangement of a verse in nodes or 'verse-feet' characterised by one long penultimate syllable, wich may also be preceded by a shoxt syllable or syllables. Fox purposes of marking these features of lemgth and shontness we intend to mphoy the symbols ( - ) and ( ${ }^{*}$ ) respectively above the syllables concemed. Unlike the Westerm Eunopean Ienguages that characterise a verseroot by an arrancement of atressed syllable surrounded by unstresced ones, the touchstones in Tawara are leneth of the penaltimate syllable and shortness of othen ayllables.f and whenever we ohowld apply the Monish tem for verse-feet to Tswana versemeet' it will always be with the reservation, already noted amlier', that there 'vonse-feet' axe merely in the ratio to the Trwana 'verse' of the English verge-foot to the finglish verse or show a tendency towards that relationship.
2.5.5 We may now proceed to the idiomatic contribution of this excerpt in which we learn that class of idiom called prajeensine, where frost will simply be referred to as segokgo sa borwa or ntitole, as the lie of divinine bones may be called dimatla on a hare morwa-meselana, respectively 'slommealing' and 'sont of ninge abd bargles' (who rums rages round dogs). 2.5.6 The significance of the nor-experadable woxds runs deeper since they bear the brund of form and menorability. In learning by heart they axe the cues, and
this excerpt could be nenorised more easily by calling out the following thought-bearine and form-bearing words and filling in the rest:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\text { Ine } 1 . & \text { segokgo sa borwa } \frac{\text { a/litole }}{} \\
2 & \text { gase ke se ana ragoga } \\
3 & \text { seaga seloma thagene }
\end{aligned}
$$

Mile not surgesting that this is how Trwana indigenoug 'poetry' orjginated, the above feature is strong enough to call into association how traditional poetry js said to have been composed by Virgil, and cortainly points a direction along which trwana poetry, may have come. Witness what an authority says of Virgil:
Van Virgil.ius word deur Donatus ook vertel dat
hy vir sy doneits eers 'n prosa-ontwerp in dic
twalf boeke incedeel, opestel hot; daarop
het hy ann die poëtiese skepping van enige
passasie becin werk waartoe hy geneë voel, ter-
Wyl hy was rodie dele voorlopie onvoltoofd laat
of tylelike redis, soos stutte (I underline) in-
voeg on die vloei van die gkeppende vermoë nie
to stuit nie. (Viljoen p. 25)

Ono is impressed by the idea of supports ('stutte'). And besides bejng 'stutte' for the poetic faculty and for memorisation, the above words are all trisyldabic and point to a trissyllabic metrical underlying form fox the composition under review; the above wosds or 'nodes' or verse-serments or 'verse-feet' bear the duxetic patterm short-hong-short ( ${ }^{-} \mathrm{m}^{v}$ ), which may, in written practice, develop in the sane relation to tiswara verse, as tho anphibrach foot to Snglish verse. That the Tswand bard, consciously or unconsciously, sought keythoughte in log-woras with corresponding basic form,
thus unting content with form, is hard to doubt.
2.5.7 The mbtje maise-words, the apt contrasts, the ingaingtive figure of gpeech, the exact balance, and the thumping mathm, tho mity th the diversity or variations of oratory, the brevity - these factors Jone a poetic aspot to our excerpt.

## Alliteration

2.6.1 The fricative sound represented in writing by the armbol $E$, ocons no less than sir times, independentiy as in the gylable -gom, in segotgo, as well as in affricative combination in the sylable -kge. To our mind these $\mathbb{R}$-sounds, phon. $[x]$, are best suitied to express the rustining sound of spidet teet running on the grourd or on the human body. It scems that the composer deliberately solocted this sound, for, the last word of line 2 for instance, zagoga, could norm Hally have been tsamaa (to go) or falola (to escape death) and so forth. Clearly, the artist uses this sound, this form, to convey a drana, to cxeate a fasion of fom and meaning, thus evon athributing this sound to human feet, even attempting by the use of ragoge to bring human movement jnto alignment with spider movement. 2.G.2 It is striking that this alliteration persists in all 'venses', as it to establish or to portray an overriding echo of the drama, totally outlasting the alveolar explosive sounds (t's) in the appositional praise-word, mantitole. The sounds of friction are the drama itself. Form is meaning and meaning is form.

## Poems on Cultural Subjects

2.7.1 Poons on cultural subjects deal with law and order, delictual diabijity, dagea smoking, beer, divining bones, and creations of Westem European origin such as the train. We dito a tow examples hereunder.

3ojalwa (Beer)
2.7.2 We propose to take Bojalwa for our andycis, and excerpts on divining, which show a cyclical tendencj.

## Bojalwa

1. Fe tshethana ya maekele, bonagaraca bo selone
2. kgomo khunwana le e botse basadi

3 moswang wa yona o kwa mahuri -
4. ro a bola ò meno maruru

5 tshwene tsa gago di a swa di a mula
[1 J.t is the yellowish brown with clots, coagulant in the thing
2 bay cow, sak the women about it
3 its dung is in the backyards -
4 wo praiso you, your teeth ane cold
5 your baboons die and regain life.]
2.7.3 Again wo havo a case of data leading to a philosopty. Ge data ane heavily chareed with imarexy: tshethana is not only yellowish-orom colour but a loved temale person. Lere we have one of those reconatte allusiona effected by means of a pun. Men are Fond of women with a light complexion, and big breaste. Whis attitude is the object of the sative here, by the implication that they are $2 s$ fond of liquor (beer) as of women or the other way about. Following the caegura in line 1 , is once again an appositional praise-nane, The appostional praise-rame howeven, takea the sting out of
the satiro, stating specifically that the refecence is to the cocgulant in the 'what's-the-name' (the thing). Again, in order to roman abstuse, the container is not named. Othervise it would have been nkgong - [nkxho:r] in the olay pot. Jine 2 leaps to anothen metaphor, kgomo khunveng (bay cow). The wonen take charge of it, and that its dur; is alroady in the backyard, means that the beer has been strained and the chaff saved. Alas: it is ready for consumption. At no stage has any datun been rendered, from linc 2 to and including line 3 , in literal texns. And at the end of the third line thore is a prolonged pauso, a moment of suspense sometimes indicating that the bard is composing his concluding verse(s), or inviting reaction by ululation from the women, on simply testing whethen in the case of a wellknown lebobo somone in the fudience can fill the bill. 2.7.4 The concluding generalisation is also exceedingly figurative, The Tswana asociate coolness with health, and heat with illness, same as a high body temperature points to fever. If aftof a visit from someone a patient gets worse, the visitor's feet are said to be hot; if the patient improves the visiton's feet are cool. We are warned that beer has teeth to bite, but they are cold - healthy. And some more satire recurs : it bites baboons, to death; some regain life. There is certainly a warm spirit towards mankind, for his safety, and $n y y$ wo contond, also penetrating utterance, ma stondy imaginative and didactic tone.
2.7.5 The pattern of composition is closely akin to that we saw oarlier in this chaptor, even in point of vamation. Vitness the three different metaphors in the throe succossive lines (1., 2, 3) - tshotihane, keono khumana, and moswane : yellowish browt renale, bay cow, dung.
2.7.6 Once more the balanced parts of the praisenames (ine 1) are marked by the Iengthened penult of ofther praise-name showr phonetically herounder:
[mae'kéle]
[selo:n]
It is apparent that when the technique of balancing parts is employed in Tswana this duretic feature is always to be expected. Mine final penult of a line or word-group may be preceded by one on more short or half-lencth syllables, not necessarily evenly distributes on cither side of the caesura. It may be prece.. ded by a length-bearing syllable on one ox both sides of the caesura. In the above case the distribution of long sylables on tho finst line would be as follows: Ke thethana ya maeke:lo/boragaraga bo selo:ng
2.7.7 Here also there is an undercurrent pattern of 'vonse-feet' borne by irreducible words in the respective lines, the 'verse-feet' being twisyllabic, that is, a long penult sumounded by short ayllables -


The threemplinble ( $\operatorname{short-long-shont)~pattern~of~verse-~}$ foot' on node once more persists as undortone, as basis of rhythm ane indication of metrical tendency.
2.7.8 In line 5 in the preceding paragraph we have added the plural prefix to the fisist word to make jt trisylabic. We find that a dissyllabic form may be subswituted in the pattem above for a trisyllabic one, on the other way about. Does this sugeest that the law of substitution is unconsciously observed in trswana mabôko? Fubstitution is defined as follows:
According to the theory of substitution, one
Inind of foot may be substituted for another
equivalont foot; an iambie foot nay be replaced
somewhere in a line by a trochaic or anapaostio
foot, a trochaic foot replaced by a dactyl and
so on; it must not take place so often that the
basic motre is lost (Boulton p. 36)

This raises the question whother binwe:ne is not the trochaic substituto on equivalent of atehwe:ne. Another example is whene the repetitive form of boraga (logically boraca-boraga) is seduplicated boragaraga, cliding the second class-prefix and thus substituting trochoe for on equating trochee with amphibrach, that is, a long-
short with a short-long-short 'ver'se-foot' We are trying to point out the importance of a study of the netrical Potures of the nodes of Thwana 'vense'.
2.7.9 There is no fintontion to attrisbute this reasoning to the fswand bard, but we attempt here to analyse what foms we fjnd. There is no intontion either sirply to apply Inglisk concepts to Tswana. But it is as impossible to avold some such previous lnowledge as to avoid the concepts verse, stanza, poem, spirit, form, and man more, ihat is more, we are concomed about tennencies to poetic construction, and it aoes appoar that there is a tendenvy towards the employnent - consciougly or unconsciously - of the theory of equivalence or substithtion.

## IJivining Boncs (Ditaola)

2.3.1 Divining bones are kept by the ngaka, doctor. Thore is a ngaka who does not keep or use them, ngeka Etchotswa, literally bombess loctor. A ngaka may be a mon or womar. The bones vasy in number but are nor. nally not fewer than four. They are made of bonos of domestic and/or wild animals. Whe five principal bones are called:
moremogolo (big tiee), its spouse isadi
(fathar's sister"), jaro (fleet-footed), its spouse kgatsane (father's littlo sister), and modimo (god). (Leseyane 1963, p. 128)
2.0.2 Upon consultation, be it for ilness, strayed idvestock, proposed planesuch as mariage or travel, seoking employment on the possibility of kecping it,
being consulted by a chiof or tribe about the likelinood or man, for the smolling out of culprits, and so forth, the diver bringe forth his hide bag of the sioe of a tobnco pouch on a litilo bigser, and the divining commoes rith punctilious ceromony. The patient is nomaily xequised to git flat on the ground, and take off one or botw ahoos, jn the supenctitione beliof that the solution to the problem wil, whenever it is, also rolar and not travel Eurban out of reach. The aivining bones are told what the poblem is and are asked to state the cames, thus: 'I an sick, in seanch of the cause and remedy; you bones of the dead have oyes, $I$ Mave none; tell us the cause and the cure'. The bones are then acatterod on a goat arin tumed upside down to allow of tilting they fall on the skin, and the fall is callod Ieva, from tha vem-bten -wa (to fall), with the class 5 nownowitx le-. As they lie, thoy are prassed, and itt is noted espocially how the princtpal ones lise. Wo bharid therefore greak of the reading of the Lie. Father Jazavant (p. 34I) calls it the tpostition'.

## Moanaro

2.8.3 Assuming it was the cause of sichnees that had to be divined, tho lie (lewa) might be the following: 1.

1. 6 mojaro wa sedimadike
2. thetologo ma matjharu
3. Le a rutlas le afola matata
4. masetha a a se nang ditcaona
(1. It is the circling of the twinine circle 2. the circle is the hedge (of the courtyard). 3. You wrench, and frou belie the servanta
5. the lisht-omploxioned who have nothing of thenr own -um
6. strmemer faces (chors) are oxagenabed, thoce of hone people minimised].

The name of the lewa is moxato or in the diminutive, moranway, meming eincling round and majeg it difeicult to trace. This aludes to the funly oincle, within the fomily courtyands sumounded by the ame hedge as that of the padient. Within the family circle they blame the servants ('wench' thea out, reveal them as witches), but, this is a lie, ondy becmes the servants are defonceless paperg and serfs. Froverbially, gepa leqolo ke la moeng, da nong fae pipitiwang. (ine 5 as translated). dt is proverbially easy to blame strangers falsely and condone hone people's bigeen misdeeds.
2.0.4 It does not appear necessary to labour facts that mast now be apparont, e. . the composition nethod from data to philosophy now that the existence of $a$ Gouthem sotho parallel to this lie points to its antiquity。
2.8.5 It is important to take special note or the way the bards aeclain their 'poems', and to attenpt to decide punctation, verses and stanzas accordingly. Bor instance lines land sonetimes sound like a binate verse, thus -

Ge noraro wa sedyadi. re, thetologo ke matha: ku
(where tho symbol (.) simixies half-length as compared to (:)),
as against:

## Ke moraro wa gedikadi:ke <br> thetologo ke matiha: ku.

That is to say, the declamation sometimes gives the impression of a half-length in the penult of sedikadise, followed by full lencth in that of mathalu, sugesting a bimate venge. Bometimes tho ponuits are of equal length, bugeesting two independert verses. itu its seens that the binate verse is the more acourate since thetologo ke matiliaku is not a freoh datum but a doduction from the preceding datum, viz. Le moraro we sediRadize.
2.8.6 The above considerations are important. in 2.8.3 above we have no punctuation maxks after lines I and 3 , to indicate that there was only an insignificant pause. It cond be said that line 1 was rum on to line 2, and 50 was line 3 to line 4 . Inis would lead to a cast in one biaxial, one triaxial and one biaxial verse, thus:
3. Ke momaro wa sedikadike//thetologo ke mathaku,
2. Le arutla//le akela malata//inasetha a a se
nang atstana -
3. sepa legolo ke la mong//La mong gae pipitlo. We observe here that in rewana there is a tendency in parallelism to more than two balanced pants.
2.8.7 Fe may take ons observations of actual declamation further. There is a pause of considerable curation atter the last word in line 1 above. The reaction of the parient to the deduction that 'the cincle
is the hedge of the fanily courtyard is caxefulay vathed. If the pationt seens or those accompanyins the pationt appear to assont (e.g. 'hm:') the aviner is encouraged. If they contradiet the deduction he may suddenly oname the lie. This is a worla of magic, fantasy, wit. fience remanks are concontrated, allusive, recondite - which contributes to a poetic tondency.
2. 3.8 In actual declamation which is ucually inclaned to be fast, a lot of sylables are oldded or contracted, thus:

1. Ke moreswa sodikadike, thetologo ke matinaku,
2. la putia, la kela mainta, masethata se nam

Aitgrona -
5. sepa Legolo ko la moent, la mone pae pivitio.

Tr this way line assumes the distinct metrical gundty of the pattom shortwlong-short, thas:

## la matla labe: mala;tamage:tha se na:ng <br> Qtigao:na

A sensitive ear senses thiametre. But, what is nore, a sensitive can senses a conschous effort to vary techatques. The finst verse is biarial; the gecond departs completoly from this feature : it is not only triamia? but also an mphitraic hexameter; the thand line ins the proverb, the generalisation basea on the data, with characteristic balanced parts, the balanced parts brournt into mutan relation by the choice of contrasting words la moens (of the stranger)
la mong gete (of tho home citizen)
sepa lerolo (big faecor)
pipitlo (mall Faeces).

This is how paralledism is attained by contrast. We night guoto an example of parallelism attained by of Aimmajon -

## Bana an ba na thwadi, ba bonywe re Mmamariga*

[hen have no superiority, tirey were observed by Bonmanisa]

We Tha attribute to Tswana oral lore a tendency to enploy varietios of parallelism, e.e. parallelism by corm trast, parallelism by aftimation.
2.8.9 In all the lines of the excerpt thone is a coiscious atriving after word-economy seen from the elisions and contractions alyeady mentioned. But there are delibergte omissions of forms intended to enhance concentration without reducing precision, e.g. 'gepa Jecolo lia moen' and not 'lesepa le lepolo ke la moens' 'la monk eae pipitlo' and not 'ia la monspae e le pipitio'. Phere are six more ayllables in the prose than in the poctry ${ }^{\text {a }}$.
2.8.10 There is also a feature we view as apostrophising. We accept the following definition for it relating to literature -

Dio afbreek van ' n betoog om 'n porsoon (dis megter; of God) dilwels iemand in sy afwesigheid, aar te sprock. In die literatuur gebruik wanneet 'n verhaal op die wyse liries ondorbreek word, soos in die volgende passasie uit Raka:

[^1]"O skoonheid van die lyf, jy slaat op uit die warde soos die rooj vonk uit die vunesteen spring......"

Wamme dio vorhaal borvat word net -
En eindelik hot Kopi an sy hart gewara.... (Grove 1963)

In oun exe erpt lines 1 and 2 , otherwise the binate line I. whichover way we read the stanza, are in tho thind person, stating with ke noparo : it is the circling. Yet the triaxial line -

## 10 a mutla lo arela malata masctina a a $s 0$ nong ditsaona

is addressed to the family circle, in their absence. After thas lirical axplosion the bard reverte to hie divination and concludes with the didactio goneralisation alroady familiar.
2.e.l. Mhat is our first observation of apostrophising. Oun exporience of Tswana maboko is growing wider gnd docpox. Wo may now confirm what Lostrado gays of praise-pooms:

Ghoy aro a typo of composition intormediate betwoen the pure, mainly narrative, epic, and the puro, mainly apostrophic, ode, beine a combination of aretanatory narration and laudatory apostrophising. (Lestrade 1962, p. 295)

If there oan be laudatory apostrophising, let us be permittod to find above its opposite, namely adnonitory apostrophising, where the family eircle is not praised but admonishod for incriminating the poor servants. Such aro the growth and development which are the subject of this investigation, not only in bulk, but in technique
too. There is no claim that Thswana bards lnew or grasped apostrophisinc, but that thoy employed this technigue, which is not surprising, because -

That languace om, and does function effectively even when its usen knows nothing about labelling ite various forms is proved by the fluoney and precision with which an intolligont child spoaks ato home lamevege before it oven goos to school. If., then, we want to pursue our studies into the function of languaro as far as we possibly can, we cannot do better than study it in action. (Hamvey, p. 1)
2.8.1. We find that the precodine excorpt advances forms and tochniquos, as well as thoumht development. Comparo Bogomgo sa borwa ir 2.2.1 and Bojalwa in 2.7.2. We find that metaphor pergists to convey the imacery. Mero sems to be a system apporing. And with this wo may now procood to another lie, lewa, seomingly cyolically rolatod to tha precedinc one. The cause of the ailment has boon dotuminod : the soroery of the family circle. Ance now what ane the chances of cure?

## Dimatla

2.9 .2 The aivining boncs are talren by the pationt. Ho/sho breatios into then in the superstitious belief of cotabliohine contact with them as a nedical practitioner with his patient by moans of the stethoscope. He/she asks then what the chances of restoration of health are, and casting thom dow, with a bit of luck, tho lio (lowa) 3.5:
line 1 Kgomo e matila le namane
\& nku le konyana
3 motho le mothwena --
4. Ke dipatia.
[1 Tho cow plods slowly with the calf
2. the ewe with the lamb

3 the human with tho baby -
4 this is slow plodding. J
Thore is no dinect telaing, which is an important featare of pootify. The motaphom mamedately pervades the diagnosis - a cow and a calf, an ewo and a larb, a perGon and a child, plodding slowly. This is quite darime inageny. And what is more, this is a drama we witness with our mind's oye. It takes deop thought to aiscover that the glow drana means slow rostoration of health. Tho sorcory of the fanily circlo will thak time to hoel, but in will bo healod, the bores say. This is how this urcombt is linkod cyclically with the preceding ono. 2.9.2 AG to Rorm, we are immediately struck by the percistent use of dimintives at tho end of lines 1,2 , 3. This is cortainly ond-riyno. those diminutive forms delimit the inos ( $1,2,3$ ), and would have porformod this function of delimiting evon if the three lines had beon wititen in ore straight line : there would heve boen a pause, thero is a panso, after each rayme-wora. And tho ment of this rmyming is that, although not maming perfectly to the ear and oye (-ane, -ana, -ana), it so rhyus in itts dininutive gonse, in its faithfulness to the nowphology of the lampuge (a myme-conscious poet might have changed nemane to namana and callod this clienge poetic Jionnce or somo othon rationalising teme), an its a evotion to truth, that the artiricially congruous wowla hove boon a jarming incongruity.
2.9.3 We notice that the form already found oarlier paraistra, namely a suceossion of data loading to a goneralisation on truisn - ko dimatla. The pause before this deduction in intontional. The patient is watched for resction. If to understands and assents, the susponse is shortar. Suspense is one of our tochiques. Fut we also notice that the and-wymine binds the datum-lines togethor. Fom soens to concolidate the data into a thourhtunit, wich thoughtunit jo explicitly expressed in the concluding genoralisation - kedimatla. This form holpe to identify tho stana.
2.9.4 Wey we be pomitiod a funther word on this ahyme this ond-rinme. It marks the ond of sogments; It matos gegments units of correspondence; it gives the sognonts oyrmhony; it punctuatos the excorpt by suggesting pauses for breath, and offect. As we gee the features, a rlymemond is a point of denareation; it in a point of punctuation as well; and finaliy is a point of euphony.
2.9.5 A final thought on this ringme : tho dinimpive

 Vilakazi strongly rocomands myaing wi.th the ponutimato and einal syllablos, and spocifically urges the inclugion of the consonant of the penultimato syllable. We are finding above that frswand omploys a given morphemo to effect ond-xhyme. thia unit of correspondomeo rhyon in sonse, and thorofore mainly by the root form (-an-). This is dofinite systom of end-rinme.

Poetic liconce consists hore in allowing an irregularity which is $x^{\text {aithful to the momphogy of the language }}$ (-ane/ana) rather than contrivjng a regularity which would be inconsistent with this morphology, as well as irsitating.
2.9.6 The mext problem in the divining oycle is whethor and where the cure can bo found; whethor and how the witchory will be avongod.

## Mpherefore

2.Jo.1 Asked the questions above, eithor by the patient or ngeka or both in turn, the lie of the bones maty be :

```
line 1. Toboketos motoboketsi
    2. '́ epe dikpolo ka dipedi
    3. Ó ope dikgolo, ó ope dinyme -
                            - - - - -
4. ntswa re trwa dikomeng
5. \(\frac{\text { dinotsho tsa me, wena mabake o ka di }}{\text { epa }}\)
```

6. Masenoseno a tia go senogela
7. nodimo o kwa ratswong la Rita
8. $2 a$ o tsala, o foloditse
9. otget,se seboko so thogo khibidu
10. Songwe seswanna, ka mherefere o' matoló
11. poboretsa motoboletsi, o se nue monyitsi a lecto.
2.10.2 We try to concontrate on features not already troated. We leave the alliteration of lines 1,6 and 1. We leave the binato fom of lines 3 and 8 , the parajulism in arfimation in lino 11. But first the transjation:
[1. Travel on travelior
12. dis bis onos with both (hands)
13. dje big owes, dig mail ones -
14. whereas we graduated in the secrecieg
15. my honey, you, sagacity, can dig it -
16. Rovelations will be revealed to you
\%. the mod is on mount Rita
17. the mod has not given birth but has miscarried
18. it has riven birth to a red-headed worm
19. and a snow white ome, by the tumult at hand -
20. Travel on, traveller, do not despise the travel.].
2.10.3 The flash of imagination is : the ngakg beIng advised by the god on mount Rita to come there and fill both hands with bif and small honey, dinotshe. This calls Samson's ridale of the honey to mind. There will be sweetness after the digsing, but there is no telling: "the god has miscarried" means that the witchery has misfired. The god allowed us to see red, the colour of blood, (the red worm), but also snow white. That rems the tumult at hand will bring more trouble (of course for the witches), followed by happiness. Thorefore, trave] on to Rita for the digeing, do not despise the effort. The metaphos of the worm is certajnly deep searching, based on the belief that the god can be the author of evill, and then good, without explicitly atating it. There is development in the creation of motaphor too from the selfevident to the more recondite. "The god which miscarries" is a strong metaphor. Go is the honey which is the health.
2.10.4 The apostrophising persists. In lines 1 - 3 the ngaka adaresses himself. That is the diviner's one way of asking the bones whether he may undextake the journey to look for romedies. But in lines 4 and 5 , arter a moments suspense, a voice replies to him,
saying, "whexeas we, that $j s$, you ngaka and $I$, god, have graduated in the secrecies, you are sagacity itself, and can dig my honey, my henling herbs." And fron here he goes back to speak to himself in lines 6-11. We have heard of laudatory apostrophising. We have pointed out admonitory apostrophisins. We now come across sugeestive apostrophising. There will be no going back on the proposition to find cures. The reward will be swoet. (Suggestion to the patient.) 2.20.5 The wom mpherefere, featuring plosivation in the stem ferefere under the influence of the nasal bilabial of the class 3 profixal formative now, is explaned by RoA. Paroz (Bibliography, VITI) as position of the divining bones, indicating trouble, dispubes.

It is used in liswana too in this sense.

Thwaedima
2.11.1 And as a fingl instalment in the cyele, a lie called thwagadina is read -
line 1: Thwagadima a marutla a qa Rat, satsi
2: Selakalaka mollo, selakalaka leitino
3: o se sale nku morago, konyana e tia go thula -

4: mbenyasilo moele, thakala le maboo mabe
5: Ka thwagadima a marutla
[1. The wrenching Jightnimg in broad daylight
2. the flame being fire, the flame an eye
3. never pursue an ewe, its larab will butt you -
4. if you defeat a fool, rorgive him, on the upsurge such fool is dangerous,
5. by the wrenching lightning.]

Becaluse the witches have pursued the patient (ewe), itts lamb (the ngaka) will butt or gore them. There will be Jightniag by day, natural eyes will see it. This lank (ngelga) is dangerous - by the wrenching lightning it can command.
2.In.a Jine 4 is a proverb featuring parallelism by affination. As in Mpherefere where the finst line rocurred at the ond (toporoton motoboketsi), in mhogadima the word-mroup thwadima o marutia, reours, as a kind of refrajn, a feature more comon in song than in 'praises' as such.
2.11. 3 We find that the proceding fous 'poems' of Givining bones constitute a series centred round a patient, a probler. This is our reason for considering them as a cyole. Thus fax this is the only cycle we have found in Tswand, but the tendency is noteworthy. We inay therefore record tentatively for Tswana that the hierarchy of verse-techniques consists of the verbemode, the verse, the stamza, tho poon, and the poom cycle.

## Recopitulation

2.12.1 As in the case of Botokgo sa Borwa, in Bojalwa we once again come across lines (lines $1,4,5$ ) with two ares, and others (2 and 3) with a single axis.* Wo reCer to the line with two balanced parts as biaxiad, and the one with a single strain as uniaxial. These lines centainly have corresponding units, and the units among

[^2]thenselvos correspond to areat extent, thus forming the basis of yerse, with a possibility of developing metre.
2.1e.2 In the light of the foregotige, a line of a lebofô has certain features. We must wateh below for the recurence of those features.
(a) As to content ..
i. It may be a datum.
i土. Tfo datum may tox instance be a praisenum with ow whow an apposition.
iii. The datun may be a variation upon another in its content.
liv. The variation may so exceed necessity as to appear overdone.
V. It may be a didactic pronouncenent, especially at the end.
vi. It may be a recondite or satirical allusion.
vii. It may be sumective.
viij. It ray be the concentrated means of expressing drana, e.g. segotro sa boxwa, mantitole.
ix. It arouseg enthustam, e.e. in its prasem namine.
(b) As to from -
i. It is a fairly well-kit entity, dehimited by penultimate length which is the basis of rhytha.
ix. It may be untaial when it has a single aris.
ini. It nay be biaxial when it has two ares.
i.v. Mre two members of a biaxial line are not alway equal in number of short syllabiles and long syllables, but are alwars separated by a caesura. :
v. Whether biaxiat on uniaxial, it has undes ot comospondence based on words that tend to bear the brunt of the mythm as well as the metrical tondency.
vi. The tendency to trisylabic rhythm and probably equivalent disyllabic rhythm of the ohort-long-short and long-short type respectively, is obvious.
Vi土. It maty be polyarial.
2. 12. 3 In $2.10 . I$ we cortainly advanced furthere be Bad a Gilphthy bulwien excempt then the preceding ones. We come across apostrophising, endmrhyne, and refrain. She ending on a provent is furthex confimation of oux Iinding, that there is i stybe of ending on a senergliaation, a philosophy, which is an effoctive way of apprehending universal truth in ibs subthety and intensity * Mis also ind joates poaisemwothy thourht... aramenent and -ievolopnent.
2.1..4 Wo have noted that some of our excempts are round in comate languages, which suggeste that they mag be of long standing we observod a conscious stniving anten woxd-economy . Wo found a defint be sym tem of men-rhymins. We have found that poetic licence je exencised mather to aphold the structure of rswana than assail it. We have noted the euphonic efect prow duced by entmhyming. We saw the operation of the hyriu oal aporit, in apostrophising for inctance.
2. 2.5 Jn the excerpis on the divining bones we have a distinct heading fox each. But the heading ean be viewed as a subheading of a greater whole The tour excerpts might be used to teach us the basis of a stanza, not just by means of this neading, but, to difSerentiate $i t$ fron prose, by mons of definjte units of comespondence from line to line, suggesting that the lines are verees of a standa. lif the excorpts are
viewed as separate poems, even as each is self-contained (without being altogether an and in itself), and can be usod independently of the others, then their persistent nelationship subseste that they may constitnte a cycle. Where is no sugrestion that these aspects are completela developed. We merely find tendoncies in this direction. There is a moasure of truth in b. Vilakazi's definition of s stanza, relyine on headings such as in the case of the subheadimgs to paragraphs in prose. hts there is more to this.
2. 2.6 Go tan our excorpts have no historical tiage. It is important to note that in Iswang too, the nabobes are not only 'poens' with an historicall tenor. So a moxe comprehensive term than "praises" and its compounds seems nocessamy as Vilakasi has felt.
2.12.? With reference to the xare and subtle techaique of apostrophising, we have found three types, viz. laugatory, suggestive, and adronitiory. We sugesti that in form, apostrophsing adressed by the bard to another ertemal party is direct, and by another external partar to the bard, invorge. We inave seen these two trpes in our ercerpts above.
2.12.8 We have already substantiated, in some mall measuse, the finding of the experts quoted in ohapten 1 - and have made fet more finding. What remains is to kind whether 'poens' of an hjetomical nature, and song, teach us aything more, in order to complete our jntended portion of the investigation into indigenous Tswana 'poetry'. All in all, in fom and in feeling, wo have already experienced growth and develoment.

## ITDIGFMOUS 'POEMS' WITH AR HISTORICAL

 TGMOR AHD INDIGRNOUS SONG
## Wen as the subject of 'Poetry'

3.1.2 By 'pomas' of an histoxical tenor we wish to conver the idea of 'poens' dealing with the vicissituces of un's life : his aspirations and frustrations, his conquests and disconifitures, his nomadism and termitorial acquisitions, his poverty and afluence, his courage and despair, his passions, statemanship, and his cuming, treachery and stupidity.
3.1.2 In the preceding chaptor we analysed excerpts dealing with subjects other than man, which indjcate that Thwana poetry captures experience other than histoxy. We now enter the fiela of seif-appraisal. We refer to it as appraisal since it is not always golf-glorirication or self-praise as we shall see below.
3.1.3 In the process of analysing poems about nataral phenonena and cultural oreations we discovered cer-tain definito poetic tendencies. We nov proceer with the specific puxpose of assessing the spirit and techniques of those 'poens' that stand closest to man hinself. This presupposes a conscious effort to understand man, because -
.... real appreciation .... depends on the power to grage the content of the poem and ...... to tuse appreciation of the content with consciousness of the form......the majority of poems have meaning that can in part bo discussed intellecthally........ (Boulton, pp. 97-8)
3.1.4 The Tswan themselves have an doa of the unfathomable quality of their apirit, saying in proverb: wotho gat itaiwe, go itsive naga
(Wan camet be known (undenstood), the vela can be lanown]

Wo guspact that the language by which the Tswanas try to fathom the unfathomale will be difficult to interpret. And understandably so.

Wotivation
3.2.1 The most persistent device in 'poems' of an historical nature is conflict. As in thelish dram thero aro usually protaconists and antasonists. Before we attenpt to seek the operation of this device, we quote hereunder how certair Afrikans authorities see it:
Die mens word gevange gehou bimn die perke
van die werklike lewe. (i) Buitekant hom is
daan hoier magte warmee hy telkens in botsing
Fora; (ii) binnekant is daar die tweespalt van
sy vadeolde wil; (iii) en varder nof die
stris met dia wil von ander mense wat hom
dwarsboom. (Sohonees $\&$ Van Bruggen, p. 260)
(The numbering (i) - (i.ii) boing mine). 3.2.2 Since contlict is a challange, it is bound to be net with keen feoling. The patriot is bound to be soen against the saboteur, fate against fortune. Ours is now a study in human values and feolings and attituades.

Colour Conscjousness
3.3.3 One Fodisume of the Bokwenck (Crocodile totemites) is said to praise himserf as follows, accoming to one Mrs A. Modibane (70 vears) of Hebron:
2. A re k'o motshomotsho o motsho wa gabo dmaphixi
2. are tio motsho
3. a ro le botgho bo
4. aro leg tsobo adima
5. A Fe thula gelgotho-se-ingata sa gob morats Dituati a lopala
6. are thris o bo thule mpe
7. op'o thulele mageteme Fabrana raditgadi a Komevir Ie Mcgeôe-mereto.
8. hatau e rilo ra mala mefitohana
9. Ja re wo wolaleng ya ararimetu
10. A re ra tioga ka bipa laono a gabo Horazane
11. ka thoma fura ya ba re re le bona paraia tse
12. Ware be roeje, ga re a koto a etgo a botoe a mo ise methyologa gosin:
[1. He raid I ari the ptoch black, the black one of the Camsly of Mmaphiri
2. he said I an the black one
3. he sate thiss blacheses
4. We gid I haven' worwowe it.
.. - - - - -
5. Ie gaid, butt, colosons of the famjy of the wite of Likgati of ropala, colosmus that paws the gromad
6. he said, butt, and butt again
7. butt also on behaif of haseteane Kpaswana, sibtor of kodisang ans migogo who is stripeg
8. Te atie, a lion once wore coper bangles
2. and arom the neckit wore a skin coverine
10. he and, then 2 hoted a cow behonging to Horamano's faridy
11. I thought it was pregnant, on seeing its uader
12. I thought it was full of milk, I trought what a lovely cow of ours wono sweet milk to toke to the chief's kenal!]
3.3.2 Kodisang's colour consciousness is mot a colour projudice. Therefore it has nobility. It, is not being companed with other colours thought inferior or superion, therefore it has moral justification. It identives him with his sister, tmaphini, which rela-
tionship is a great stimulus to action in an impendins conilict. Therefore whether tho words be truly Kodi.. sang's on are put into his mouth by a bard, on the one hand interioniby is not being acceptod because ho jn black, ane on the other, it is accepted that nature has so leoreed -.
3. a re le potgho bo
4. a re lee teso adima

This gives us an insight into the spirit of the time : consciousncss of boing a black people, haring feelinge of pateraity as men towatds womemill for thom they are born to be responsiblo. Self-assessment is evidence of this conschounoss, which self-assensment signifies conm Whicts in one's heart (tweospalt van sy verdedde wil). Resignation to the dinevitable, the unborrowed black coLour, points to an awareness of -
"hoer magte warmee hy telkens in botsing kon".
3.3.3 Goloun enthusiasm of ten rums high, as happened when we ascea Jacobina Whate (born Momogale, $\pm 75$ ) to recite the 'poems' of her olan, the royal clan of the Hogopa (Kwera) tribe, and che readily responded thus:

1. Fe mat fifi la rokrena sethibolle sa ba Modiana Tau
2. bosigo ba phutha-batho-dinao e re bo ga o ba phutholle;
3. motho wabo kwena e ntsho Ya Modian a Tau e rens ge tholla majmana e tswe e eme ka maroo khwitime;
4. motho wabo leswene-lemanela-thaba, namene tsa masalasopans;
5. motho vaabo lotgje a Fangana, mametinasedi a tlbasela netse a Bapo, a thasela metse a boramphosokwane ka makuku ka mantobontobo, le baratant ba sa ntse ba ntge,
G. ngwetgi a tswa a phuthile makgabe -
6. 2 re, "O thasbanso ta o le mosatsa mogale, o le nokatsa Sekokomotse-tsibogong?"
7. A le ge go twe komo tsa IIogopa di lebelo, a di ka sia badisu?
8. Gs ekg pe di fithna fa kgorons ya Nketeka Letswering a kgarimetsa ka molope ka mosasana?
lo. Heelang lona basinatoe te bololle borangwane Tooketsi a Iethiba
9. le re ba age mekroro, le robale moo yona
10. e re o lorans lehuma, a le lore
11. ore o lorang pula, a e lovele Balrwera ba Moropa!
12. Tsatsi le a thaba lwa Thotwe
13. Ie ine maranc masesane kwa hakolokwe
14. no sedi 1 e legolo a le tsisa mo Betha-a-a-me:
[1. I an the derkness of the Kwena, the shield of the fandily of hodiane of tau
15. (I am) the night such as causes people to ourb their movemonts until daybreak when they can stretch their feet;
16. l"an of the famidy of the black crocodiJe of plodiane of 'lau; when itt portends evill fox pregnant wonen it stards on its paws in the valley and out of the water;
17. Man of the family of the baboon-troop-that-climbs-the-mountain, descendants of those who remain in the ruins;
18. Man of the family of Fotsile of the Hangana (age-set), the attacker wo attacked the Bapo villages and the villages of Ramphosoliwane and others early in the moming while lovers were still resting -
19. so that the daughter-in-law ran out holding her fringe of strings (worn to cover private parts) by hand -
20. he said, "what do you flee from, being a gallant mon's wife, being wife of Gelrokemetse-tsibogong?' *
*Belokonetse - tsibogong in the praise-name of Motsile I, meaning "it is seated, wating on guard in the foxa". I believe this is Motsile, chief of the Bakwena ba ga Mogopa who died circ. 1834.6. (Gee Tribes of Fivistenburg and pilanesberg Districts by P, -I. Breutz, par.2es).
21. Even were the cattle of the logopa tribe e:ceedingly fleetfooted, can they outrun the sordboys?
22. Wen they reach the entrance at mketeka, wouldn't Letswading chout and whistle?
23. Wey: jou boys, tell uncle Mooketsi Lethibe and othens
24. tell them to build hute and yoú sloep in them
25. who dreans poventy, let them drean it therein
26. Who areans rain (prosperity). let thern dreath it for the rweng of mogopa:
27. The gun ribes over the hill called thotwe
28. int sonas weat rays to Makololwe
29. and brinss the man light to Bethony:]

## Soveroignty

3.4.1 The forme called praisemanos are heavily charged with menning. We refer to -
$\therefore$

Gine 1. fifi da Mokwena : darkeess of the Kwena
" 2. bogigo bs phutha-batho-dinao $\frac{\text { such asht }}{}$ movements that is, gathers peoples feet.

Wine 1. sethibolle saba hodian a Tau: [shield
7. $\frac{\text { Sekometse-tribogonr }}{\text { the ford.] }}$ [it js seated in

Motsile I was the darkness of the Fmena. Tbis metaphor is followed by an even mowe powerful one referring to him as the 'night'. At night all people retum home for safety. And that, is Motsile I. Mis people returm to him for safoty. Is this an ode to Motsile or to the bhack coloun or to monarchy? 'fhese interpretations ane indiscoluble and indicate depth of thought.
3.4.2 But Motsile I was also the shield of his people, belongind to the fandy or clan of Modiane, a monan. Mhere is no telling that chiertainship leans hesvilu on fonale support. This is simply the position as ju is, tis methon of shielting his people was by watching over the fords to keop enemies out, me Tswana rorer to a miot as momene and to a king as kgosi. We are dealiag here with a character that saw to it that national tomitony was never entered by enemien. This was done by aumang the forde. Could it mean that the Tswan considewod thom monena a kosi when he onsured we sovereizrty of the state by guardras all entrances against intruders?
3.4.3 Could it mean that this is the Bantu conception of monarchy - one who ensures sovereignty by guardng the fords? The Zulus aay of Tshaka (Cope p. 117) -

Ingwan' elamb'ivimbel' eziny" izingwan' Mazibukweni
[Teopard that goos to prevent other leopards ati the fords].

Or could it mean that Tswanc and Zulu 'poems' were pen chonce -
.... pebore uit 'n in momige opsiste vermanto geestesgesteldheic......
on did the bards have -
...toevallig eonderse visíe?
We are not unging that these poems be viewed as connected in any way, but the comparison is certanny -
..... 'n verhelderende metode on 'n avontum on uit die dubbele pergpektief van twee dictars as dioselfde samk te kyk (olocte $1963, \mathrm{p} .1$ )

Wom this double pexspective, garding the fords seems to ensure sovereignty and sovereignty to consolidate nonachy. This shielding of family and fatherland is the height of patriotism. And in great measure the pooms of historical tonor are poems of patriotisn This protection is a response to conflict -
die strad met dio wil van ander mense wat hom dwarsboom. (vide 3.2. I )

So is the conflict against Rampobokwe, Webele mo-narch, which results in the recapture of Fiwena daughters-in-law. and patemal feclings are once mone a strong point (linos 5, 6, 7).

Tribal Ag wandizernent
3.5.1 There is no doubt that much of the Tswana 'poetry' with a historical tenor is also intended to 'record' for posterity the triumphs of the respective olans or chiefams. The preceding paragraphs have already show us how conflict is the unbroken lifeline of this latesuture, and we intend to note how it oporatos as the basis of tribal agerandizement.
3.5.2 Tho laureate of the Bafokeng of Phokeng, noar Rustenburg, Mbegeng Hagano, a man who distinguishes clearly between 'poems' he Iearned from old tribemen, anc those composed by hinself, praised the Bafokeng as reconded hereunder, and assured us that this is not his composition, but one handed down by word of mouth:

1. So mona Barokeng ba ga Makgongana a Sokete
2. Baroheng mele, sobete teng Mavebele
3. Dega mpsana-phutha-dinala
4. Se e phutholla, toe dingwo e loma
5. bana ba thari e kwa ligamakwe
6. peloganatho, polega-yo-magapena-se-yong
7. Jo go twong beloga mokgongwana o sitilhotse
8. o stthetse ka thari yo namane gome thari ya thhepe bojeti a a boa
9. Hivlo ke tsena kwa melvana ka fitjhelago duduodina
10. go the Fabedi o a mala
11. ba re bogadi bo dule, bo tswetgo Fodigakeng lo

Petlele lwa Thekwana
12. ngwana a soatla-senkgamomela, le motsine a sa
bo tshwarang o nts'a bo nkga fela
13. bana ba gabo Getshele morwa rmaledi
14. mone o kil' a balia tshukudu
15. move wa tlotlopi ya kgomo tse khunwana
16. tse noe di fula kwa phalakwe, Bet Ghele.

1\%. Ba re kgomo di ile Bafokeng
18. ai toene ka noka prasela
19. dj ile go bona kwa po Ietseng tiaditlapana Setghele.
20. Fe kromo toe khumana tha gabo Ramauba a dibata
21. ke komo the khuwana tsa gabo mabasimare,
mabatinanka
.- - .- ... -
2e. 3 a me jethele boola borwa
23. batio ge se diphologolo, Betrable.
[1. It's wo the Bafoleng of Mmakgongwane of Sekete,
2. Bafokeng in appearance, inside in the liver being Maebele
3. people of puppy-draw-in-your-claws
4. in it oubstretches, it bitos tho others
5. chilenen of the crade at Rganakwe
6. carrier of the people, carmer of thoge whose mother is no more
7. of whom it is sajd, carry outsize ones and tie f"imaly
B. tie Tinmly the odf hide oradle for the sprimg buck ekin is soft and therefore loosens.
-.. .- - - -
2. When I arrived at Therwana I found ulubating in progress
10. it was said kabedí was mamying

Il. they and the bride price (bogadi) had been pait to Moxisakeng and Petrele of Thekwent
12. oon of tho hand that mmells of walt even on occasions when he has not touched it
13. chilemon of Betshole's maniy, Betshole on of Maladi
14. material that once did choke a rhinoceros
15. children of the nomb of bay ows
16. Whobe that grazed at Phajakwe, Betenele.
17. Whey say the cattue have vanished, Baforeng
16. they disapoarse down the rivor of tho massels

1\%. they have gonc to spy whero dayight-mhunderbult, Soterhele, is
20. They are the bay cows of the family of ianama of tha beasts of proy
2l. they are the bay cows of the mother of boys. mothen of servants.
22. They say, Bethele return to the Bouth
23. people are not animals, Bet Guele.]
3.5.3. The Bafokeng considor themselves a geat Pswana tribe, not Jocking fierce and moch dreaded

Nobele blood. Wheix patriarchs aro maned in line 1. Their off-shoot setmele, founter of the Bakwena ba Ea Getshele tribe that is reputed to have been the finst Tswena tribe to settle in Botowana, is also mentioned, Tos purposes of lasting record. But that is clearly not the main subject of the 'poetry'. The main gubject of the 'poom' is charactor, the fiorceness tempored with the lanamesis of this taibe showing that the Tswana kew that vichoumoss coupled with moderation builas a groat nation. Conflict in the royal house

Feops faning the fire that puts this viciousness and thas moderation to the test. The Batokong are not only the descondants of Makgongwan of selcete, not only of tho much fearad itdabole actraction, but their charactar iss:
line 3 : ba ma mpenamphatha-dinala : [I interpret
bis to nean that they never stant quarrels; they even keep thoix nails drawn in: until......]
 provoked to stretch out their nails thoy can be vicious, camivorous; ]
 fact would rather alvay succour peopto, succour those who have no refuge.] of. translation on page 64.
3.5.4 This is amagery, characterisation, 'poetry'. Provocation cones when mombers of the royal fanily at Thomman dare to apropriate bride price to themselves. Arter all, all royal daughters are the chief's sisters and he 'tutas' their bricle price. These provocative characters must bo severely eriticjsod, and therein consists oun 'poetry' again -

Line I2 : ngana a seatia-senkga-momela le motging a sa bo tsheranc o nts'a bo nkes fela. .
This Kebedi stinks, to say the least of hin; even as malt, that is liquor, intoxicates, his recalcitance is a perpetalal intoxication; this is no wonder since he is of gotshele's family, Setshele who lod a splinter group through the mountain pass where the Russels lived and wont North; in spite of thia Sethele being of moos binth, a man wose mother's bride price (bogadi)
was duly paid with the cattic that grazed at Phadakwe. The bard discharges his duty of chastising the recalcitrants, caling them by thein names. Mnis Betwole is as unperdetable as a baylimt-thunderbolt : he can do the wampobed. Lat than tribe has enough foregiveress to jnvito him back home bocause people need not chaso one mothen on flee from one anothor endlessly ... Jine $2 弓:$ Ba re Betbelo boha Borwa 2: batho ge se dipholorolo, Betphele. 3.5.5 The greatness of a tribe is not only in battle but ia ainlonacy too. This can also be seen Where the reatheartedness of rotsile I is demonstrated in his gathering his poople oven as tho night silontily impels people to gather in amilios, in clans, in tabes 2: bosimo ba phutha-batho-dinao o re bo sa obaphuthole. (3.3.3)
3.5.6 In regard to form we were guided by the band's main patses, loading to division into rour stantas. The verses and the stmzas are unegual jn length. We were guided by pauses and rosumptions. It appears senecal practice to begin a verse with fresh gusto as we do a musical bar.
3.5.7 The aistribution of uniaxial and biaxial verses is aleo irregular. A conscious bid to avoid monotony is apparent. A conscious bid to state a comphete datum in every verse is evident.
3.5.8 Findly, wo find in this poem the device Krown as the periodic sentence or construction. Line 13 relates that this noisomo group of Rabedi are
descendants of Bethele. Lines $14,15,16$ are data that
could easily be dissociated from Setshele, but for the
last word of line 16 being 3etshele again.
3.5.9 We had occasion to hear Chief :Zlence Mokgoko
of mamethake, warmbatho district, also praise his tribe
as follows -

1. Duncla setiakga-sewa-temong:
2. O dumediswa le Mapela-madumetsa
3. kgosi ya atla fse diphatgha llapala
4. o a paletseng Matebele, ba Mokopane le
ba Ilaka;
5. Q dumediswa ke motshikhiri o mahutwana
6. dibolawa-di-ipolagla.

- ‥ ‥ -. - -

7. Ke Mapalamadumetsa, keosi ya atia tse diphatgha
O. kgosi ya sefa-le-babereki;
8. Ke nowana a mantobeng-ka-dikapo
9. Madisama-dpodi le tla loba batseta.
    -         -             - … .. -
10. 20 ba malrau a hocise
11. bo motramini o manutwans
12. 5e diboba-dimothata -
13. ${ }^{7}$ o bona ba llana
    -         - ... - - --
14. Ke bana ba thari ya boraro no bogosing ba
Bargata
15. me ba ipela ka setso se ba leng ka sona;
1.7. Ko bana ba Dipere, ba Pholwngtana-ra-ke-
na-lebelo
16. tsa fai aitantata di ntse;
17. magoparopa o gogopa nethape e thale
thatjhane ya bonamadi
18. tee ding e be di tlatihelse kwa letamong -
2]. Dunelans Digolokwane:
[1. ${ }^{3}$ greet you, antidy one that stumbles ploughing:
19. you are ereetod by Mapalamedumetsa
20. chiof of the black-and-white hands Mapala
21. rio succesarully resisted the Ndebele of

Mokopane and Laka;
2. you are weeted by tho knotted tall grass
6. thone who when injured react by also injuring.
7. Ghis js Mapala-maduatoga, chief with black-and-white hands
3. chief who gives rations even to labourers;
9. son of Reward-mé-with-sheep
10. those who roat goats can reward my embsaries.
11. They are the tribe of Mmalnau of Modise
II. . the motted tall grass
13. they are the gadrides of the sedge -
14. as you see them like that.
16. They are the children of the third Kgatla rojal houre
17. they are Djpêrệa descendants, descendutus of Phokugwana who is no fast runner
18. his gains come to him without effort on his part;
19. gatherer who collects herds and fills the hedies of Ramadi
20. even fraaling the overflow in the enclosure of the dam -
21. I greet you Digolokwane:]
3.5.10 The brunt of the 'poetry' is bone by the
figurative praise-nanes -
line 2. $\frac{\text { Mapala }}{\text { medng }}$ verb sten - pala, to resist;
2. nadunetsa < verb stem-dumedisa, to meet; meaning one who habitunly homours by greetins;

1. Betlakaia-sewa-temong : one who does not mind getting soifed while ploughins, therefore an industrious one; a proud name indeed;
2. MotGhikhiri o mahutwana : darl: meen tall Erass ubed by hordboys in mock-fichting and very painful indeed to be beaton with, sometimes used to thatch;
```
line 6. {ibolawa-di-jpolaela ; calls into asso-
    Where a tribe clatas to be vicione
    only when provoked - a simm of greatmess;
    9. Ratobenc-gamdiapa : Rewardwo-with-m
    10. Madsa-ka-dpodi : those who rear goats, a
        reaners:
    13. - \bova-dj-motluakg : Gadflies of the
    1%. nagoparopa & vorb stem -gogopa, to Eather,
        meanjng gatherer of lavestook, wealth.
```

3.5.11 Above is roaj imagery in which the nanes of the patriarchs ane used gparingly and instead prasemames are oreated acording to characten. The tribe is proud of its ark coloun, thus seeing itself as dark green frass; but the tribe can hit painfully and give peotection, in necessary, as this type of stass, wich some use for thatohing to provide irotection fron the elonents and others use for Eighting, the knotted feature of this mass refers to its nodes that make it flexible and so much more cutable for thatching as well as fighting Whis alability is the character of the tribe, which on protect or rout, and there in no doubt in our mind that much is compessed into this pratsename to point to greathearteaness that must nover be mistaken for offeminacy on cowardice. This is a tribe of gadflies that live in the sedge, not just everywhere. You have to try to cut the sedge to kincle their wrath. Whole essays would be required to set out the characterigtios of this tribe as compressed into the panisemords.
3.5.12 The economic requirementis of the tribe are not forgotten. The patwiarch is Reward-mewith-sheep (Raqtobong-kamakgea). It is praisoworthy to rear Gheep because you can maintain your chief therewi.th. It is a poor show to rear goats - your chief apurnc then The satire aganst goatherds is plain. The royal appoval of sinepherds speaks for jtself - all this in two compounds:
madisa-ka-djpodi
Ravtobong-ka-dikepa.
Tro trabe are magopasopa, sationers, of livestock, a conception still being propagated to date, and long regarded by anthropologists as the cattle complex of the Bontu. This twbe has quite an opinion of itself gerealogicaly, militaristically, and economically. And what is noble, there is no derogation of arybocy else. haene is simpliy great and positive selfoesteem which is Antenced efthen as fact ox sugcestion or both.
3.5.33 An epic je mom to be a poen which recounts a great event in a grand style, a homote poem. Whereas the strie of these 'poens' tencis to be 'giand', the nistomoal eventa are ondy hinted at. me bard never intends that any other pexson should have full morledge, Iost he (the bead) loses the authonity as composer. An this is what weakens the historjcal walue of our 'poetar'. Thone is also the favourable bias, the fact that praise instead of balanced evaluation predoninates, that weakens the historical value. Ve find however that these 'poens' are relevant to this aspect of our task inammeh as they
neverl tendoncies towards the opic fom. As a foundation on mach modem bards on start, having fullew historicul aecons, ther bring the composition of true epics within gight.
3. .7.1. Thena royalty has a passion for honow, sometimes terenowitins into a denand to be worshipped. Mapala noed not ayy that he loows this. The fact that he culs mimself madeetsa - one who habitual ly greets ghows how feverishly he wishes to ingratate himsolt with has monareh, But in line 6 he gtillu warns that ho hurta mon he is hurt.
3.5 .15 In this poen also we find the periodic construction (lines 2, 3). Lest line 3 be misconstrued to reter to the paramount who is being greeted, the name Mapala recurs. Mic helps to establish the fact that the onquest ovor the Macbelo (Ine 4) was dapala's. The motivation is again oonflicti.
3.5.16 The oharactor on a tribe is thus often urought into claan relien in pithy excerpts. A.J. 'Nookey (j.75) says of the Batratia of the Keafela grouls that they were excellent at rar, their totem being the blue monkey or perhaps formerly the fine flano -- both of which (the monkey and the flane) share the name kgabo. Whoy praise. themsolvos thus ...

## 1. Segibelo-omollô, se fša se a thaologa

2. Sare se fevametse Fa falala
3. Ya tghaba naputiola, ya ma nakgoganyana:
4. nombia o krothikgolo Bakgatia
5. band ba sefatana sa horulong

## 6. berwa-mpsave-jele-mpgana-ya-yona

## 7. dithata tsa ga Molefe a masilo tse di jelong <br> moksorodi o lala.

[]. The cruse that is Xire, if it bums it molta
2. and when it bums villages scatter
3. and fies in opinters and froments:
4. the momala troe with a thick stem
5. the matatia are chichen of the concavity* of romulens.
6. sons of the-do -has-levoured-its-own-pup
7. Doces of mololo of Masilo that ate the hut in which wey ghept.]
3.5.3.7 The essence of the 'poetry' is omptured by the mataphom of tho 'ino crase', the 'morula tree with a thick stem', 'the ho devouring its pup', the 'roxees that ato tho muty in wich they slept'. Gace nore the character rather than the bistory of the tribe is uppermost. The two are fused, since aistorical reference to fatherland (foruleng) and to patriarchs (iolefe of Viasilo) is mantainod. As to chacter, the tribe is a cool oil. cmase; yón dare bum it, yón dare provoke a conclict, it melta --

> sodibelo-o-molio, ae ara se a thaologa

The oruse melts : a motonyw meanse that the oil theref molts, and toms your villages fnto splinters and freat monts, The cmase itself remains, since the Bolgatita are a thick moruia stem : ites 'sten' (gothitgolo) will remin unimpared, and if need be, befriend the enemy, rebuild, and eventually overthow the enemy -
dithatatsa ga liolere a Masilo tse di jeleng mokrorodiolala.

[^3]3.5.18 The idea of 'fonces' that will never be remover is the heifht of love for the fathentan, patriotism, comparabe to line 4 in 3.3.3:
 sotenz.

If tho defonce of the fatienland is at stalce the Balsabla will ondist even disidren to fight, the dog thus entiog Itg ma - Danvanga-e-jele-meseng-ya-yona.
5.5.19 We have further inaications that Bantu Inten waturo is one great wole men wo roail that the Barolong are also praised as -

Wane tha thole Barolong ai jang mogope
dio bala. [ Calves of the heiferr, Barolong, who consume the hut whereas thoy sloep in i.t.]
3.5.20 minghout, the inclinatiom simply to flee fron ar enemy and surrender the fathestand is suppresseat, and the intbention to remain in the fatherland emotivelw eaprossed or sussested. This is the spirit in wich the Aindicenous people of Gouth africa called the Tswana ane brought up and when bing praiso themselves in front of the sroat powers that govern ther, they humbly pray in the teras above for the retention of their fatherland, preciscla in the selfosane smatit in whoh Westom peoplos pray in national anthems.
3.5.2] The linkings in our 'poem' are subtio and menimafl repetitions. In line 6 the dos has devoured its pup -
c jele (mpana-ya-yona).

In the rext lime the 'fovces' have eaten a hut in which they shept -

```
aj jolene (mokgoro dj o Mala)
```

How dee the dog and the 'fonces' Inked? When wis dog sets vichous and consumes its young, the battie is suxe to be won and the hat (onery) consumed.

We see such linking also in lines 1 and 2 . The alliterative rocurmence of the voicqless alveolar sibilent sound ( $s$ ) in lines 1 and 2 immediately suggests the sound os bumins fat.
3.5.2\% It was intemecine conilict that provokec the patriotism of the Kgatla chief, Pillane, to school and warn his rival brother Kgothanawe in 'poetry' that he (Pilane) was (Bchapera 1.55 et seq., lines $1,3,5,40$ ) Pilane a maloga [Pilane the war-anger]

## selo se mo kopong ka fa Dithotlhe, ba

 dintiha ba ntse ba se cwaisa[Thene's a beast in the diff in Dithhotihe mountain and dwellers at tho outposts keep provoling it]

But rinoliy: Pilane ke letlapa la ntswepilwane :
[Pilane is the rock of iponstone.] Every efrort is mace to leave a favourable record of righteous indagnation leading to active conflict in onder to build a patriotjc people. And this embodies the spixit of this 'poetry' 3.5.23 It happens too that a tribe praises another jif diplomatic relationships are bealthy, or a susgestion in this connection has to be made. The example hereunder, obtained fron thageng Magano of Phokeng, alreagy nazed io 3.5.2 above, makes use of the themes of the excemt in 3.5.16 and the style of mokgolso in 3.5.9, thus:

1. Dunela sedivelo se mollo, morula o kgothikgolo Bakgatla
2. ngwane sefatana saroruleng sa fsa metbe a phalia
3. ba ma makgaoganyana, ba ma maputlacanyana -
4. ke lebotro la Krosi. Kgamanyane Pilane kwa Kgatela
a Thatheso, Gua Fruth dikobo Balgatha.

-     -         -             -                 -                     - 

5. Batgatla ba re ga go krosi ya Bakgatla

Transefala
6. krosi ke Isang kwa Iotshodi Bakgatia
7. Bakgatha ba re selo se mo Ditlhotihe
selo se mo kopoopong, ba dintiba ba ntse ba se Ewaisa Bakgatla!
3.5.24 This is Hugano's own composition, based on the saga of Filane referred to jn 3.5 .16 above. and this is how the spirit of indigenous 'poetry' travels : by original composition followed by composition upon composition. The translation of the above encerpt is as follows -
[1. I greet you, burning cruse, moxula tree with thick stem, Bakgatla
2. Son of the concave dweljing at lloruleng which burns and disperses villages
3. the villages splinter apart and stay in dribs and drabs -
4. that is the praise of chief Kgamanyane Pilane of the Kgafelas of Fiatshego at Phuthadikobo, the 3akgatla
5. The Bakgatia say there is no kgetla chief in the Transvad
6. the only ohief is Isang of Motshodi, Balrgatia.
7. The Balrgatla say there is a beast in Ditikothe, the beast is in the cliff, the commoness keep prodding it, Bakegtla.]

The spirit of courtesy revealed here can be of great be. nefit to a chief or his enissaries visiting another and indicates a serious effort to glorify the tribe, and reflects also the diplomatic function of the bard.
3.5.25 Tribal organisation may also be the theme of animal praise, partjoularly the totem animal, and we talse the praise of the wild boar as an instance:

1. Mathintinyane, mmanakana di Banomg
2. Ke rile ke le tlou ka bona naka di nkena
3. ka kgola, ka mela diphothô
4. Ka nela tshweu di ganong -
5. kolobe, molema-rnalene o-sa-a-jaleng.
[1. $\frac{\text { ithintrinyme }}{\text { in }}$, grower of little homs
6. While I was an elephant I realised the tusks didn't suit me
7. I fhed them, grew strong sharp fangs
8. grew white things in the mouth -
9. the boar, tiller of soils that it does not sow]

How else can a man justify his forming his ow chierdom than that one family has monopolised the 'elephant tusks', the chieftaincy, and his turn has not been fowthoming? It is not always certain how a tribe cane to adopt a particular totem, but the wild boar toteraitea relate that they and the Bafokenc and the Batloung hed very close ties. Drought cane, and on one occasion a man discovered a fresh footpath in the forest, which he followed up to a pool of water never known to the community. The path had been beaten by troops of wild boars. A section of the commanty broke away from the main group, pretending to be going in search of water and food, whereas they wexe going to live within easy reach of the pool of the wild boars, and to establish a new chiefdom of wild boar totemites.
3.5.26 The story js captured in the 'poen'. The praise-word mathinthingane is deideophonic, pointing to the reaction of a boar to anything startling, viz. thi: thi: followed either by attacking on fleeing. Bimilarly when the wild boan totemites were still with the elephant totenstes, something startled then, ostensibly the drought, but really the railure to get the 'tasks' or powers of chieftaincy -
ka bona nakana di nksana [lit. I realised that the homs refused me].

The breaking away is recaptured in the personal shedejng of the tusks and the growing of large fangs -
ka kola ga mela aphothô.
3.5.27 Ghe boar finds its food by ploughing the soil with its onout and goes to fresh areas to dig noxe. This habit is ubed to justify the breaking away. No metten what the roup had invested in sweat and/os matesial value in the wea orjoinaliy owned with the elephant totexitos, now they move to fresh territory. Wile we leamed that the Bafokens invited daylight thunderbolt Betshele back fron the North (3,5.2, lines 22 and 23 ) in the interests of tribal cohesion, we now witness praise of lack of this cohesion. But in that way too a big and progessive tribe, the Banolobeng oit richtenburg District, has come into being, and the praise of the wild boar is now the prajse of the royal house, the personal as well as commaty praise.

## Intertribal emulation

3.6.2 The striving after tribal cohesion must at some stage clash with the striving after splintering. And so it is that when the mdebele attacked the Thsana, who are inclined to splintering, the necessity of tribal colnesion and military solidarity becane evident. Asked about the Rolong royal house at Mafeking, Mrs s. Seane ( 80 ycars) chose to say the praise of Kebalepile I Montshiwa -

1. O montle ntweng ngwana kgosi yo masisi go tlabana
2. loofisiri je le tsetsweng ke onyama leisantwa.
3. Ko monye a kalenela malokwana fakoreng tsoo Ramokeng
4. thala ja lelioko ja ga hotholoo oo izathwane
5. are, 'thhoangen ka thata, a ma matsetse Q hela a Fe 10 a bone?'

-     -         -             -                 -                     - 

[.. You are excollent at war, king's son who shuns waxrins,
2. officer borm of the matien of the age-get maisantwa.

-     -         -             -                 -                     - 

3. I saw him reprimand the members (of the aray) at the hedges of Ramokeng
4. monbers of the group of rothoko of the Rothwane ward,
5. saying, 'fight hurd, don't you see that the fileas are being exterminated?']
3.6.2 Once more the tendency to affect to disialre warring, or warning only when provoked, is uppermost ngyana keosi yo masisi eo thabana [king's son who shuns warrag ]

But the same character is at his best in war -- nontle ntweng 【you are excellent at war]

It $\mathrm{f} \beta$ also implied in line 2 that he is a born officen, and in line 3 that even outside actual army activity, in the village, he mantains order atong mem, organining them to fight hand in view of the amy's heavy losses. The charactor of this amy is captured in the word 'fleas'. The record or subeestion of gallantry is conveyed in the ideas of excellence at war and being a bom officer, and once more, to show the role of the woinn in tswan affairs, born of maiden, leisantwa, pluad maicantswe, age-set [1it: wagers of war.]
3.6.3 Of the father of mobalepile $I$ (the name mens 'I am watching them'), namely rontshiwa I, G.ri. jolena, brothen of lirs S. Seane, writes as follows:
Where was no black tan in South Aifica whose
rane was so much in the nouth of the public and
the press in the middle and towards the end of
the 19th century as that of llontshiwa (or
riontshioa as it has been corrupted). There was
certainly no better lnom ifrican nathe in South
Africa and ingland in those years commencing in
1800 and ending 1886, and no person was more
admired, lionised, petted, courted, and caressed
by the one aropean section, while he was at the
sane time hated, abused, cursed, vilisied and
damed by the other section. Such is the per-
son whose life jt is intended to shetch in these
pages - Hontshiwa, chief of the Tshidi branch
of the Barolong tribe. (Nolema p. 1).
B. Molena relates how liontshiwa and kis fellowinitiates (the Mantwa - 'larriors) assassinated enissaries of Mailikazi circ. 1332, "and the national bards inmediately celebrated the episode in song and verse which hom one of Montshiwa's panegyrics". Here rollows the panegytic:

```
1. Ditsela tse di tshelang Segope le Mainelo
2. ga se tsa dioka le gone ga se tsa ditlou;
3. ke ditsela tsa batho, ba ne ba re etetse
    e le dintona tsa ga Moselekatse
4. go romilwe Boya le Pategele co tla go re thola
5. mine sejankabo-ke-wena-a-jawana o ba jele :
6. Ba gago le bone ba tla jewa nkabo fela jalo.
7. Kana ga o setseno sa ntša o setseno sa notho
8. me le sa ntša tota se a ediwa -
9. Ilhatlusi-o-Sephiri-o-Mokgothu:
```

Translation by S.M. Molema:
[1. The roads that cross by segope and ottoshoop
2. are not made by ghoulish giants non by elephants.
3. They are blazed by men who had visited us.

Those inen were the emissaries of lizilikazi.
4. He had sent Boya and Bhangele to visit us
5. But thou crafty son of Tawana ate them up :
6. yours will be similarly eaten up craftily -
7. Remember you are not a mad dos, but a man
8. But even a mad dor can be mimicked and imitated:
9. Thou Royal Highness : Thou unrevealed Mystery of Mokgothu] (Montshima, ibid, p. 20)
3.6.4 It is significant that liontshiwa is referred to in the title of the book as 'patriot'. The Tswana as such would urge patriotism, justice and moderation, They see in the destruction of lizilikazi's emissaries an
imnoral and unjust act that will be avenged, when justice takes its course. There can be no moral defence since even a mad dog (tacitly Montshiwa's viciousness is praised) can be bitten in turn. Respect for human dignity is advocated explicitly in line $2-$

```
ga se tsa dioka le gone ga se tsa ditlou
```

    [.... neither ghoulish giants ...nor elephants]
    And immediately the bard, who exercises licence to chastise injustice and imorality, even using proper names, gives the prince-initiate the name of Sejankabo (lit. ester of regret), but the height of this chastising is conveyed in line 9 , which savours of bathos. The prince is paradoxically hailed 'Royal Highness, Mystery of Fokgothu', the latter phrase alluding, acconding to Lolema , to Iontshiwa's secret descent from the liokgothu. The prince is hailed 'Royal Highness' and literally in the same breath meanly and publicly denigrated : a 'Mystery'.
3.6.5 The point at issue however is that there was intertribal suspicion simmering between the Rolong and the NGuni. Who says Hzilikazi's intentions were honest? And who says the denigration of rontshiwa by his bard is not intended to forewam and therefore fore-arm him? That is the rôle of the bard. The baid is a constructive institution. He is a loving critic. 3.6.6 Intertribal emulation occurs among the Tswana themselves too, even as we see in the following praise:

Mokgosi a Pooe

1. Dirobaroba-matlhakola tsa ga Masodi a Iphela.

-     -         -             -                 -                     - 

2. Kgodumo e dikgopo, nare yo Sebitso le mthomang
3. ga e ke e leba motho a tswa motho
4. e mne e lebe o suleng fela
5. Se tau ya namane, ke bata se se mokokotlo montsho
6. rraggue a tlogê ka go thoboga
7. maagwe a lele e sa le gale.
8. Te tlou e ntle ya Mapula a ksosi
9. entlentle e mo Latsaakganye.

-     -         -             -                 - 

10. Leru la duma fa ga Molatedi
11. la re le duma la thubaganya motho
12. Ie thubile Miphete wa ga Marwala :
13. "Mphete ga o a ka wa itse go tshaba
14. e rile o tshaba wa etsaetsega o lebaccine le naka la tshukudu".

-     -         -             -                 - 

15. Tau e tswa lapeng e thanyere marumo
16. e tswa lapens la ga Seriba a Sebitsonyane a Photi
17. e le thebe e tshumu, morwakgosi.
18. Lerumo la thipa, Lerumo la pitso
19. ga le ke le timela e le la kgosi
20. notlhang le timelans le a re bela.
[1. Crashers of the thomless bush, descendants of Masodi of Mphela!
21. Encircler with outstanding ribs, buffalo of the family of jebitso and ISthonang
22. it never looks at a person who remains a living person
23. When it does look at you, you are dead.

- It is the calf that is a lion, the beast of prey with a black ridge-back

6. his Pather might as well give him up and retire
7. his mother could also nourn beforehand
8. It is the fine elephant of the Mapula regiment of the chier
9. an extremely beautiful one, itself of the Hatsaakgang regiment
10. The cloud thundered at Molatedi
ll. when it did it crashed a ran asunder
11. it crashed riphete of flarwala :
12. Mphete, you knew not how to ilee
13. When you had to flee you hesitated, being face to face with the rhino's horn".

-     -         -             -                 - 

15. The lion leaves the court-yard clasping spears
16. out of the court-yard of Seriba of Sebitsonyane of Photi
17. being a white-faced shield, the prince :
18. spear which is a mife, spear which is a gathering
19. it never disappears since it is the chief's
20. When it does disappear it slices us.]
3.6.7 The first 'verse' is a thought-unit or stanza on its own, and is the praise-name of the Malete (falindi) tribe of Botswana, near Gaberone, some of whose nearest neighbours are the Tlokwa at Gaborone, and the Transvaal Tlokwa at molatedi (line lu).
3.6.8 This crasher, Mokgosi of Pooe, is also a military tactician - he sucks you or draws you in like a magnet, and having outstanding ribs, can draw in a large number of you. In plain language he is so excellent at war that he easily encircles the enemy by crescent formation. He is a calf that is a lion -

## tau ya namane

- meaning that in his youth he is capable of great deeds of bravery, his parents can give hin up to the dangers of warfare. He is also the elephant son of a chief of the Mapula age-set, hence the strongest of the sons of the Mapula, and the finest of his own regiment, the liotsakgang. But coming to our theme of intertribel
emulation, he is the cloud that crashed Piphete asunder at Molatedi. Mphete should have fled and not faced the rhino horn. Teaching liphete that discretion would have been the better part of valour, he creates a situation Wherein Prohete was faced with a rhino, and hesitated to flee -

13. Iphete ga o a ka wa itse go tshaba
14. e rile o tshaba wa etsaetsega o lebagane le naka la tshukudu.
3.6.9 This is being rather fatherly to one's victin, showing that primitive peoples responded to pangs of conscience. And to point to the oneness of Bantu literature we notice once more the sentiment expressed regard.ing Montshiwa and others, of fighting only when provoked. If Prohete had not been impudent, hesitating instead of fleeing, the 'thunder' would not have 'crashed' hin!
3.6.10 Te have also seen how llokgosi a Pooe is referred to as a shield (line 17), as was the case with Hotsile; hov Mokgosj is called lerumo la pitso (spear that gathers or calls) even as iotsile was called the 'night' that gathered people; how Pilane is the 'fire cruse' which melts only when it is burnt (provoked), even as Hontshiwa is 'king's son that shuns warring'. The depth of Tswana poetry is best fathomed by being viewed in the context of the whole.

## Interracial Contact

3.7.1 Understandably the test of patriotismis more severe in the interracial contact situation. Bven

Christianity has not tamed racial attitudes which are expressed proverbially, and in Tswana also poetically as follows:

Blood is thicker than water
Seboba re bata sa mokotla, sa mpa re a inpanpetsa.
[Iit. We slap the gadfly that bites on the back, the one that bites on the belly we just pat.j

We leamed also in the 'lies' of the divining bones in 2.8.3, line 5, that strangers faeces (errors) are exaggerated, those of hone people euphemised -
sepa legolo ke la moeng, la mong gae pipitio. These truths are especially alive between races, and nore so when one race is pagan (but not irreligious) and another Christian.
3.7.2 Traditional Tswana 'poetry' on the race theme reveals Tswana race attitudes. Intrusion into racial privacy, understandably, will be answered not only by eruptions of war-fare but passionate 'poetry' too, e.g.:

1. Lobitiela yo ò gapa bosigo, e re bo sa a thasele
2. a tlhakanye Maburu le Barolong, a ba digele ka bodiba
3. Thalatsi yo ó kottó
4. ó ja morahe, ó sebutlo, o tla digela batho
5. ka e a re a abela Barolong ntwa
6. ntwa e lale e haladitse
7. go bale boRaphetino le Raleinana
8. e tswa jalo ba se na mamanologo
9. maoto a boile, ba sa tlhole ba siana
10. ba se ke ba tabogela Lotihakane.
```
11. Lethopaksomo, leitsamotho-so-kaya
12. le iditse morwa Jane go kolopa
13. Leburu ja Kolong la kibakiba
14. la latlhegelwa ke minili le paka
15. ga sala go beqa boRabotsima
16. Se thola go jeva dithethamelelo
17. go jewa thata ya vogale ja gago
_ - - - - -
18. Mmaselaletso ena o bele
19. e se re ke bola motho a lo tlhabanetse
20. Ya ne e kete ke boka setshwakga:
    - - -- ..- - -
```

[1. Butcher who plunders by night, then at dawn attacks
2. mixing Boers and Barolong and driving then into deep waters
3. detemined disperser
4. consumes the tribe, is an accurate shot, will lead the people into trouble
5. since when he declares a Barolong war
6. the war routs the same night
7. until the old men Raphetlho and Raleinana also start fighting
8. Whereas they have no more strength
9. their feet having become weak, no longer being able to run
10. no longer taking their regular exercise running to Lotihakane.
11. Capturer of cattle, who denies his opponent any emlanations
12. he denied Jen's son tine to shoot
13. the Boer of the Hants river trotted
14. losing his nealies and suit of clothes
15. as was reported by Rabotsima and others
16. that they spent the whole day celebreting with delicacies
17. profiting from your bravery.
18. imaselaletso, do stand and act
19. Whereas I praise a man who defended you all
20. let it not seem as if I praise a sluggard!]
3.7.3 We were informed that this is the praise of Seane Tawana, a Rolong chief. The spirit of the tribe is captured by the bard in forceful nouns and archaic verbs. That Beane is a butcher may either be approved on disapproved oi according to intonation:

Lobitiela .... bodiba : (1) butcher, (a term savouring of disapproval);
(2) who plunders by night and attacks at dawn (further disapproval of capturing first and then fighting);
(3) driving both Boers and Barolong into deep waters - contrast with Montshiwa who was concemed about the fleas (matsetse) being destroyed.

If a leader who plunders first and then fights is thus chastised, we must subnit that as a tribe whose spirit was reflected by these words of its laureate, the Barolong had a high moral sensitivity even towards other races. Lines 3 and 4 confirm this disapproval of indiscriminate massacre further with the non-honorifics:
tlhalatsi yo o kòtó : [determined disperser]

- ja morahe : [he consunes the tribe]
- tla digela batho : he will lead people into trouble]
because -
O sebutlo : literally, he is a wrist, meaning his wrist balances a gun barrel with accurate effect (an antique usage).

Clearly the bard senses the spirit of the tribe to be opposed to Tawana's military exploits because he will not shoot to frighten off but to kill, until old men Who camot run any more enter battle. With Pilane it was fighting until even youngsters entered battle baxwa mpšana-e-jele-mpšana-ya-yona.
3.7.4 The bard dare not forget that he is the chief's paid official, and so in the second stanza the praises shower. Cattle were captured without any negotiation -
lethopakgomo, leitsa-motho-ro-kaya
Jan's son was talren by surprise and could not even fire a shot -

Ie iditse morva Jane go rolopa.
Jan's son fled, leaving his clothing for the looting and his foodstufis for the feasting, so powerful was Seane Tewana -
14. .... la lathegelwa ke mmidi le paka - - - -- - -
16. ga thola go jewa dithethomelolo
17. go jewa thata ya bogale ja gago.
3.7.5 And finally, it is revealed that the whole conflict is a patemal duty, wherefore Mmaselaletso (and other women) must actively acknowledge the chief's valour and fatherly protection, further evidence of the woman's rôle in Tswana politics.
3.7.6 It is a fact that as the white race spread over the subcontinent of Bouth Africa, the Bantu often fought with the Whites against other Bantu or other Thites. And what has gone on in the hearts of Bantu used against Bantu? Tho else could capture their honest attitude but the bard? Who else could sense their true moral fibre? In this regard the Kgatla relate the enlistment of their armies under chief Kgananyane Pilane, who was related by afinity to King Mosweswe of Basutoland, to fight with the Boers against Mošwesve. The legendary tale is that Kgananyane 'wrote a letter' to Mošwešwe, saying -

1. Kè lemawana le ntlha pedi
2. Ie tihabelang kobo le moroki tshekedi
3. ke re ke le kwano ke koo
4. ntiha nngwe ke tswele borokgwe, ntlha nngwe Ierebi.
[1. I an the awl with two points
5. Which pricks the kaross and the mender aslant
6. Wile I am this end, I am that end
7. one leg wearing a trouser and the other a
loin skin.]
The above rendering is not the same in every detail as that recorded earlier than we recocded it by I. Schapera (p. 70, lines 5-14). This shows what can happen to unwritten literature from bard to bard, from generation to generation. The message is the same, that of torn loyalties between the dominant white race and fellowblacks, the latter relationship once again strengthened by a marriage. Hence the message of Kgananyane to Mošweše was heavily laden with feeling.
3.7.7 Roy Thomas (p. 49) says,
.... on the whole .... the great poets' .... vocabulary is thick with common nouns and strong verbs.

The metaphor ke lemawana, the descriptive construction tshekedi, the archaic term lekebi, the verb-sten tlhabelang with its direct sensory stimulus, the divided loyalties captured memorably by the alliterative arrangenent of the velar explosive consonants (k's) in line 3 - these few words are thick with meaning, conveying a drana in a man's mind, which many of us have perhaps experienced at one or another time. It conveys drama of actual history, a test of blood loyalty as against legal loyalty, a contradiction of patriotisms, and finally a test of moral sensitivity and diplomacy. 3.7.8 The traditional idiom lore at his disposal gave Igananyane the cue : a two-faced person is lnow as Ienao le ntiha pedi, from experience with awls in the karossmaking trade of the Tswana. The word tsheleci we have heard only in this excerpt and many people do not know it. It was apparently a creation for the occasion to make the meaning of the 'letter' more recondite. The nearest to it is tshekamisa, used for climbing a hill aslant, for instance. The awl is used more often aslant than erect. Schapera uses the praise-name of Tgamanyane, Tshesetsi (the fast one) in place of tshelredi, which Kgananyane is not likely to have used in a seemingly secret code message. The rhythr is left unimpaired and whichever bard has introduced the change,
he has remained a good bard. The costume of a trouser for one leg and a loin skin for another is the work of fruitful imarination, and should be the height of humour on the dramatic stage.
3.7.9 This excerpt, which like many of its kind occurs singly as well as in association with other exerpts, is a thought-unit itself and a lasting philosophy, a display of wit, and therefore in our juagerent an instance of true epigramatic expression. We recall that we are in search of poetic tendencies and growth. Are the Thswana perhaps able to recognise - consciously or unconsciously - their epigramatic creations and so occasionally memorise them as entities? Or conversely, do Tswana bards compose around such epigrams and in that way contribute to a growth tendency?

Satire
3.8.1 N authority says -

Batire is one of the more intellectual kinds of writing and most modern satirists have lived quiet intellectual lives. (Orwell, p. 89).

The declanatory tone of 'Pswana 'poetry' is the natural product of their boisterous life. Small wonder that satine is one of their more sporadic literary creations. We must however seek the tendency, if for future exploitation.
3.8.2 We have seen satirical reference to the doings of Seane Tawana for instance in 3.7 .2 above, to those of the Ianily witches in 2.8.3. We have seen this device
develop into undisguised bathos in Montshiwa's praise above (Iine 9 in 3.6.3). In 3.3.I we noticed in lines 8 - l2 how a lion wearing copper bangles lost a prolific milker to ordinary Fodisang. We observed in 3.3.3 how the ridebele slept and made love and were taken by surprise by Motsile $I$, lines 5, 6 and 7, who released the captured daughters-in-law. The recalcitrance of Kabedi remains unpardoned and he must bear like the mark of Cain the nave -
ngwana a seatla-senkga-momela. (line 12 in 3.5.2).

We noted also iokgoko's approval of sheep famers, and spite for goatherds in lines 9 and 10 in 3.5.9, and we cannot but note what happens to those who dare 'burn' the 'fire cruse' as captured in lines 1, 2, 3 in 3.5.16. There seem to be clear signs of satire in Tswana 'poetry', and it rearins for us to investigate its growth nen dovelopment.
3.3.3 We had occasion recently to watch the reaction of a group of teenage school girls in the precarious safety of a passenger bus, about to carry them home after a sports meeting, when accosted through the windows of the bus by a gang of little "wolves" of their own age. The reaction was in music of traditional rhythm and dance in the words below:

$$
\frac{\text { Basimane ba rata go jola }}{\frac{\text { ba tshaba sapôtô }}{\text { [Boys like jollification }}} \begin{aligned}
& \text { yet they shum supporting] }
\end{aligned}
$$

The singing was repeated loudly, and the louder the music the more the little "wolves" dragged their tails
between their legs, stopped their suggestions, and seemed to wish sincerely the bus would pull off before too many ears heard the satire. The little boys were a sorry sight. The transiiterations $j \hat{j} l a$ and sapôtô make the song even more humorous since such is the language of the delinquent, and he literally could not face his own music.
3.8.4 In indigenous 'poetry' we recall a stanza Arom the praise of Chief Mankuroane of the Batlhaping, Which vas recited to us in the Taung district of N. T. Cape:

1. Thokadipotso a Mmakeakjwile
2. ga a na dipotso, ma na dinyaelo
3. ga a na le ngrang a re ke a tshaneka
4. e bile ga a na le tau e kotane
5. e bile e ntse e bebenya dipounama
6. Gano ja yona le le lehibidu
7. digabêrê di re koo lela mabatabata.
-- -. - - - -
[I. No-questions, son of Fmakeakgwile
8. allows no questions and no jokes,
9. not even a child is allowed a joke -
10. no matter even if it be a lion on its haunches
11. its lips trembling with anger
12. its mouth cavity blood red
13. guns boorning incessantly].

Quite clearly this had to do with a person in a bis and powerful position : a lion on its haunches stands much higher than on all fours. It is in a temper, judging by its trembling lips. But this lion has guns digabêre - that boom continually. Its mouth cavity is red enough to be of special note. In spite of all this,
the outsize lion dare ask no questions. Ve could not get a satisfactory explanation of how Miankurwane's 'white' neighbours had annoyed hirn or he them, but he apparently got the better of them this time and his bard mocked at them. They must have made some stupid error if even their booming guns were of no effect. The nave Thokadipotso (No-questions) compares well with Ieitsamotho-so-kaya (3.7.2 line II) and is sufficient evidence of the chief's having scored on all fronts and everybody appearing hat in the hand or tail between the legs before him. The transliteration digabêrê betrays the language-group of the victims of the satire ('gewere'). 3.8.5 A further instance of this nature collected in the same Taung area was as one Boiturelo Ranotho ( $\pm 80$ years) praised himself saying -

1. Ke mathelesetsa, ke loeto ke etile
2. Le mazbane ke letse ke אorogile.
3. Erono ya lla ya bitsa moedisi
4. Ya lela Ya bitsa moetlhabanedi, kotswana
5. yo re nngwêêê ya lela sello :
6. Kgono tsa fa Hathelesetsa di maswe, di nanya
7. di maswe, di mokoduekocue.
8. Onteile tse kae ka go baka?
9. Ka re ke nteile sene le serataro
10. borangwane e bile ba a nkitse
11. go nana so gatšwa, e a e le boRamotho ba tle go batla masori
```
[1. I am generosity, I'm a journey, I journey
2. even yesterday I arrived back.
3. A cow loved sumoning its herdsman
4. it lowed sumoning its defender, the grey cow
5. it lowed moooo: it gave a low
6. Mathelesetsa's cattle are in a bad way, they
    are lean
7. in a very bad way, they are extrenely lean.
                                    - - - - -
3. How many have you earned that I praise you?
9. I say I eamed a foursome, a sextet
10. ny patemal uncles even know me now
11. easily gifts are taken, now even the Ranothos
    come to ask for presents.]
```

3.8.6 Nathelesetsa neans a liberal person who is ready to give food or presents to visitors. First it is used, as we feel it, as a cominon noun, and then as a proper name. Already the implication is that other people are not nearly so generous. Mathelesetsa's cattle know him and call to him when he arrives as if to acknowledge that he is their tender and their protector. They have his sympathy. By implication, do the audience have any cattle? Do they tend and protect them? Do their cattle know them too? And now the direct challenge to the audience follows:

> 3. Onteile tse kae ka go baka? [How many

As to Mathelesetsa he not only boasts a kraalrul, but, what is more stinging satire, his paternal uncles who probably used to ignore him and forgot that as their elder brother's son he was their senior, now know hir, now recognise him -

## 10. borangwane e bile ba a nkitse.

Row true this is in Rwana society: ris uncles now clain thein rights to his generous gifts and actually come to ask for, really demand as of right, presents from him. 3.8.7 Hatheletsa's uncles would need no explanation of this 'poen'. They would be in exactly the same position as the boys we referred to in 3.8 .3 above. The truth about life is that what is wrong usually triumphs over what is right, to enable what is ripht to transcend eventually in clearer relief.
3.8.8 Fe have had satire in two lines, seven lines, and eleven lines above. There is development. There is growth. There is a clear tendency to react critically to undesirable behaviour, and to be voluble and vehement in one's disapprovel. We now have in mind a longer 'poen' on a man called Molome, which is also the name of a kind of locust. In the 'poen' we propose to review, the nanes of various kinds of grasshoppers and locusts come into the drana, These names are borne by human characters, much like the chanacters of Animal Rarm (quoted in 3.3.1), the intention being to satirise the bearexs of these locust names by bringing their character into comparison with that of the locusts.

## Holome

1. Are ke tatakgopi kge lome ke a raga
2. Ke raga re ikiletsa rakanyana a ntomans;
3. a re nna ke nkokone-o-ntlogele a ba Tisane
4. a re le bolioselé ba sale ba kokona ba tlogela
5. a re nna ke diftko-di-nkwela-cale le tsa motha a pula a medupe.
6. 1 re ba Mothibe ba ratanye
7. a re ba ratantsue ke podi ya leleme;
8. a re ba Nothibe ba fetile ba tseleganye ba ile ka kwa kgotleng
9. Rakikillane nna ba setse morago a thoma ba tlo mo fa sebete
10. a ba a re le g'a tsena a thoka le go se botsa.
11. A re nnaze leteteetee le le ka kwa kgotleng lele ke la eng?
12. A re nina ga ke thole ke le lolome ke Segongwane
13. Molome ke setlósíla ke mmone ba o gola motsheggre ka kwa Kgotleng
14. Ka ba nna ka bona a golwa ke le botaafitenyena a rasilo

-     -         -             -                 - 

15. Ere nnaare wena Pmamphêlana, o llelanso ts'o
16. Mamphêlana, lla o homole
17. a re na aga s'a ntora se nkhupile fela Wa gabo nolekole

-     -         -             -                 - 

18. Maare ma ke rileng wa gabo Helokwe
19. abe thokwa le gola mo masetlaokeng
20. Kgocrana di thuthuswa bonkgodi ntse ba le yo
21. bena ba tsalwa phajane ntse di se teng
22. phala di tsala di tshaba mathalerwa!
[1. He says I'm the grasshopper, I don't bite, I kick
23. I kick against the wild dogs that bite me;
24. he says I an pick-my-bones-and-leave-me of the Tisanes
25. he says Mosele and others have since picked my bones and left me so
26. he says I am hail-that-has-fallen-on-mesince, even the hails of incessant rains.
27. Fe says the hothibes have become reconciled
28. he says they have been reconciled by the goat of a tongue;
29. he says the liothibes lined up past here going to the court
30. Rakikillane followed them hoping they would give him liver
31. but when he got there he could not even ask ther for it.
32. He says what uproar is that at the court?
33. He says I an no lonçer Píolome but segongwane.*
34. Molome is stupid, I saw them mudile it in broad daylight at the court
35. even such as little David of Masilo mudaled hirn.
36. He says, as to you Ilmamphêlana, why do you weep, why don't you keep quiet?
37. Pmarrêlana, weep and shut up.
38. He says it hasn't bitten me, it only held me in the mouth being of the old lady's family.

-     -         -             - 

18. Wat is wrong with me of relorwe's family?
19. after all grass grows mile there are ants,
20. chicks are hatched wijle there are hawks,
21. children are born while there are no nappies,
22. 'rooibogke' brins forth their young while they flee from wild dogs!]

-     -         -             -                 -                     - 

3.8.9 Our 'poem' is full or metaphor. Line $I$ is where Molome introduces hirself as a grasshopper that does not bite but kicks. This means he does not use his mouth to argue; he uses his foot in defence. Line 2 refers to the yelpers that use their mouths as much as the wild dogs that bite - and they are the ones Molome kicks. Molome boasts he is of Tisane's family or its

[^4]ward; they can pick meat from his bones but will not finish hin -

## 3. .... nkokone-o-ntlozele a ba Tisane

In other words their gossip has no effect on hir. Moselé and others tried to pick his bones - gossiped unfavourably - but found he had long learned to stand hails (of gossip), even incessant ones. The people concerned must be shocked to ifind that Yolone knows so much of their tongue-wagging. Lines 1 - 5 constitute a thoughtunit, which we view as a stanza, demarcated in declanation by a rather longish pause.
3.8.10 The second thought-unit on stanza tells of the group of Mothibe that has since become reconciled because of the goat that is a tongue.* 'Rumour' is called podi ya tsela (goat of the road) in Tswana. The new creation for gossip is podi ya leleme (goat of the tongue on goat that is a tongue). Greedy Rakikillane misunderstood and thought it was a real goat and he could get a piece of liver, but when he got to the court he found them wagging their tongues, not slaughtering, and so could not ask for liver. How humorous! How satirical:
3.8.1 The third stage in the thought-arrangerient is that there is uproar at the court - so much tonguewagging is going on. One of the Molomes is there and is easily accused, muddled and found guilty : he is so stupid that Molome the 'poet' renounces the family name

[^5] larly they gathered here when there was tongue-wagging. The tongue attracted a crowd just as would a slaughtered goat. Therefore according to this satire the tongue of a gossip is a slaughtered goat.
and adopts the name of another locust as family name, viz. Segongwane. Line 13 humorously rakes Molone a stupid man, and simultaneously a locust that is just gathered into a bag (ba o gola) -
\[

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 13. } \frac{\text { Molome (the man) ke setláela, ke mone }}{\text { (the man) ba o (the locust) gola ..... }} \\
& \text { [lit. Molone is stupid, I saw him, they } \\
& \text { collected it.....] }
\end{aligned}
$$
\]

Bven little David of Masilo muddled him (man again). 3.8.12 The fourth stanza treats of a sympathiser Who is weeping because of the work of the 'wild dogs', the mouth-users or tongue-waggers. This Imanphelana, near relation of llolome, must weep and shut up; after all he (iolome, now Segongwane) was not bitten but just held in the mouth by the wild dog - the accusations have not been successful in his case - he of the old lady's (Mamelana's)family, And finally, he would like to know (stanza 5) what is wrong with him of Melokwe's fanily that tongue-waggers always pick him out and even take him to court. Other people are not treated like that; but this last idea is not nearly so plainly expressed. To advocate that his errors could be overlooked he submits these subtleties:
line 19 - after all, grass grows in spite of ants:
line 20 - after all chicks are hatched in spite of hawks;
line 21 - after all, children are born in spite of shortage of napkins
lin2 22 - 'rooibokke' bear their young in spite of wild dogs and why should he not be left at peace in spite of his faults?
3.8.13 We have the longest-sustained satire here that we could find. From the first to the last of the twentytwo lines it is one satirical cut after the other, and this highly intellectual type of poem is fairly fully developed here. At no stage does the language or imagery becone commonplace. We have heard people actually swear at each other in like circumstances. But here we have purity of language and development of thought, with the last stanza as a kind of climax in the thought-arrangement and -development. This example shows that satire is a genre of Tswana indigenous 'poetry'.
3.8.14 Witing on this genre a researcher finds this quotation applicable:

```
Poetry, and, for that matter, any type of litera-
ture, is not written in vacuo. It is the living
product of a living society, and it must, to some extent, mirror the characteristics of the society in wich it is conceived.......
```

a definite link exists between literature and society, that society must shape and mould the writer's ideas (I underline) (Melamu, p. l). Quite clearly Molome is in the grips of his society and is chased like a buck by wild doss. This is a characteristically unforgiving society, as we see from his subtle reasoning in the last stanza. This genre in particular requires intimate knowledge and understanding of one's society, but also ability to use intellectually one's metaphors and phrases. These features are manifest.
3.8.15 If satire airs at the exposure of folly and the castigation of vice, if it is invective, humorous and didactic, then our poem above is a sample of Tswana satire. Where Skelton finds, according to Melamu (3.8.14) that -

Yet is your tongue an adder's tail Full like a scorpion stinging,

Molome finds his society's mouths actually wild.dogs' mouths, their tongues those of goats, incriminating people just like a locust catcher gathering locusts into a bag by the thousand or dumping them into a pot for cooking alive.

## Song

3.9.1 We have referred in 3.8 .3 above to the satire in a tune sung by school girls to keep boys' immoral advances at bay. After all, nobody else can check boys' norals more effectively than girls themselves, for proverbially, volenti non fit injuria. And this is often the ain and use of song in Tswana. It pours out feeling, for or against. The Tswana sing Koma, usually sung by men only. Being esoteric, the koma is difficult to obtain and often replaced in entertainment by moepelwane, lit. songlet. Purthemore there are work songs, Iullabies, wedding songs, and also rather esoteric initiation songs.
3.9.2 An example of moepelwane is as follows:

1. Kgabo nnyennye, kgabo nnye
2. kgabo sebatanyana
3. kgabo e tla senya ditšhaba di agile merafe.
```
[1. Monkey tiny-tiny, monkey small
2. monkey, little beast of prey
3. monkey will spoil the organisation of nations.]
```

One senses the intention to poke fun and create humour, also to satirise, and finally to compliment. There is an epigramatic touch.
3.9.3 Jine 1 captures most of the humour. We have said in 3.5 .26 above that the praise of an animal eventually becones the praise of a person/people, especially with totem animals. The monkey is a toter animal. This songlet is often sung to poke fun at a nonkey totenite. It insinuates for instance that the baboon totemite is physically bigger and stronger than the monkey toternite. And that is how the ridicule is effected. Line 2 continues the ridicule saying that the monkey is a little beast of prey, iciomatically a rascal. The climax is reached in line 3 which subinits that the rascal may be destructive. In intended as a compliment line 1 may mean that the monley is so small, and line 2 that it is yet so clever, and line 3 that it can therefore awaken complacent people to their rightful interests and clains and is therefore a welcome acquisition. We have hunowr, satire, compliment, knit into one, inseparably so.
3.9.4 This is how characterisation is undertaken by the indigenous 'poet', in much the same way as Rudyard Kipling obseaves is done in the handing of delicate social matters, saying:

Then all the world would keep a matter hid, Bince truth is seldom friend to any crowd, Hen write in fable as old Aesop did, Jesting at that which none would name aloud. (Kipling, p. 545.)
3.9.5 A wedding song usually goes to the accompaniment or dancing and is therefore particularly rhythrical, e. C -

1. Finangwane mpulele
2. ke neva ke pula (bis)

Refrain:
3. Ke na le dikgomo
4. di pedi di tharo
5. di ka tsaya mosadi
[1. Aunt, open up for me
2. rain is soaking me.
3. I have cattle
4. they are two, maybe three 5. they can take a wife.]

In the singing the initial nasal consonents in malangwane and mpulele are not syllabic. Hence the entire rhythr of lines 1 - 4 is in trisyllabic 'feet'. Variation cones with the first 'foot' of line 5 which has four syllables, reminding us of Th . Endeman's finding in 1.5.2. that a peculiar verse-foot (v . .v) is freely used in Bantu. ABain this literature is not in vacuo. The tradition is that one marries one's aunt's daughter, hence this plea to have the door opened by one's aunt. There are cattle for the bride price, which is law.
3.9.6 The songs are generally short and have to be repeated emphatically and emotionally. We take a worksong as example :
first part : Tomolang, tomolang ka thata
chorus : sepodisi, ntwa ka diatla
[first part: Pull out, pull out energetically
chorus : burweed, a battle by hand.]

This is repeated with untold fervour and stimulates activity. The work must be done energetically, ka thata, and by hend, ka diatla. The order is to pull out weeds, tomolans. A definite link is forged between this literature and society's work, and indeed the work of society moulds the composer's ideas, and his ideas mould his people's work.
3.9.7 There are also songs of tribal aggrendizement, orten that part of the koma which may be rendered in public, e.g.
finst part : l. Mlotlang kgosi e kgolo banna,
2. Banna tlotlang kgosi e kgolo banna.

Refrain : 3. He, tshaba di Gaketse
[first part : l. Eonour the great chief, men,
2. Men, honour the great chief, men.

Chorus : 3. Mey, nations are serious].

Variation is introduced in various ways, sometimes the first part singing the chorus words, and the chorus taking the place of the first part. The purpose is to encourage tribal solidarity. Tris may also be very relevant when there is a recalcitrant headman and he is made to feel which way the sympathies of the tribe lie. There is a strong feeling of earnest happiness. Once more the last line or refrain is the climax - "get serious because nations are serious", and here feeling overflows, and dance steps are intensified, pointing to the power of intertribal emulation.
3.9.8 An example of an initiation song or two should surfice. It will also strike one by its simplicity, its repetitions, its feeling, e.g.

1. Amodika, áó a sesetsa le noka?
2. Obatla tlhapi tsa noka?
3. he! modike wee! nnaka
4. a o a sesetsa le noka?
5. a ò a sesetsa le noka?
6. he: moguera wee: nnaka
7. a ò a sesetsa le nora?
8. a ò a sesetsa le noka?
9. ò batla tlhapi tsa noka?
10. a o a sesetsa le noka?
[1. Overdue initiate,* is he creeping stealthily along the river?
11. Is he looking for the fishes of the river?
12. say: overdue initiate, my younger brother
13. are you creeping stealthily along the river?
14. are you creeping stealthily along the river?
15. say! initiate, say! my younger brother
16. are you creeping stealthily along the river?
17. are you creeping stealthily along the river?
18. are you looking for the fishes of the river?
19. are you stealthily creeping along the river?]

Modika (< verb-stem -dika : to spend a year) is a youth who should have been to the circumcision lodge already and is now overdue. Such a youth goes surreptitiously to the river where girls bathe and watches them unseen, which is an indication of his sexual maturity. His elder brother spots him, understands the behaviour, and finds a way of bringing it to the notice of the fathers

[^6]by song. Hence the word nnaka (ny younger brother) is repeated, and that with a feeling of sympathy, as an appeal to the fathers to send the modika without undue delay to the lodge. In the first two lines the song refers in the third person (hign-toned subjectival concord ó) to the rodika to call attention, thereafter in the second person (low-toned i) to report specifically of someone actually spoken to, and yet to report courteously and humbly : according to decorum.
3.9.9 The metaphor of 'Iishing' for courting is know in $V e s t e r n ~ l a n g u a g e s ~ t o o . ~ R e p e t i t i o n ~ o f ~ w o r d s ~ a n d ~$ phrases facilitates rhythm.
3.9.10 At the circumcision lodge more singing is practised, with various motives. The following is a case in point:

Motlhabeletsi : 1. Hee! momna ke kgama Ya pholo Banna/magwera : 2. Hoo! Igama ya madi tsela
3. tsela letouto.
[Precentor : 1. Wey, hey! the ran is a hartebeest ox.
Men/initiates : 2. Hoola: the blood hartebeest is the road
3. the road the repetition.]

This is said to be a satire against men who did not arrange for their sons to join the initiates. They are simply hartebeest oxen. Their children will have no right to procreate, being oxen. The blood hartebeest is the man who repeatedly took the road to the leader of the lodge to enlist his son. This keeping on the
road, this repetition, this perseverance was to give one's son the blood qualification. Hence -
2. Ggama ya madi tsela
3. tsela letouto

The mere distinction of men as kgama ya pholo (hartebeest or) and kgama ya madi (blood hartebeest) has enough stigma to nake men listen to a boy's elder brother singing Modisa (3.9.8).
3.9.11 Finally, and by no means to imply that the subject is exhausted, there are lullabies, such as:

1. Letsatsi tla lwano)
2. mexiti eya koo , bis
3. le bana bagago )

And by way of variation, which is an important device in all indigenous literature:

[1. Sun, come hither
2. shades, go thither
3. and your children too.

-     -         -             -                 - 

4. Shades go thither
5. Jun, come hither
6. and your children tool

Once more there is repetition and there is rhythm. But what is more, the whole composition is again in trisyllabic 'feet' so that a change of the order of the lines causes no metrical irregularity. The word eya (go) is sung as a monosyllable for this purpose.
3.9.12 The above examples show sufficiently that the Tswana song is part of Tswana 'poetry', by its spirit and its rhythm, perhaps by a tendency to greater metrical excellence or regularity, and that the Tswana song is Iyrical too.

## Form: Verse, Stanza

3.1C.1 We have seen some form of versc. In 1.9.4, $2.4 .2,2.7 .3,2.9 .3,3.3 .9-12$ we observed clear tendencies to the stanza form. One has to hear the bards themselves, and watch them, to grasp the boundaries of verses and stanzas. One also has to study the punctuation of early collectors of indigenous 'poetry'.
3.10.2 The traditional bard is a dramatist. His recital (voordrag) presents a situation. He feels and represents the purpose of his key-words. The nodding with the head on the words

ㅇ motshomotsho o motsho
shows that the bard intends the alliteration. The bard's gesticulations on the word thula and its derivatives show how she emotionally urges to butting (3.3.1, lines 1-7).
3.10.3 Further good form is in the syntactical sphere. Appropriate words are not only pleasing to read, worthy of the attention of us learners, but also effective in depicting the characters: 3.3.1 -
8. .... ya rwala mefitshana : it wore copper bangles
9. .... ya apara lepetu : it wore a skin cover

The Tswana rwala (wear) the bangles, sandals, hats. The Tswana apara (wear) the beads round the neck, the blanket, the shirt. The bard consciously demonstrates these distinctive Sorms.
3.10.4 The bard consciously indicates the boundaries of his verses : by fresh emphasis at the beginning of a line and by savouring the end-word of the line; by the use of a re (he says) at the beginning of lines, and also by the use of distinct penultimate length. It is the bard who, of his orm accord, recites all words fest, so that the length-bearing syllables of middle nodes are not noticed, and then lengthens the ultimate penult, first because this innediately ushers in the end of a datum, and because this is the end of a verse. The bard himself fuses form and meaning. The length of the penult in a periodic construction is even more pronouced (3.5.2, lines $13-16$ ), as if to say, 'Iest my audience loses the meaning, this is the person I have been alluding to : Setšhe ....... le:', Similarly a verse which is a stanza as we have in line 1 , par. 3.6.6, is declaimed as an entity, that is marked off as a complete thought-unit. It is an idionatic creation which has remained as the form of greeting of the chiefdom.
3.10.5 We have also found the bards very conscious of their rhythmic creations. They actually move the body in step with nodes, thus performing the metre, e.g.
 gà à nǎ/dípōtsoo/ga ā nă/dǐn yaelǒ/

3.10. 6 The ruming-on of the axes of a verse is noticeable especially when compared with what one hears from children taught at school. This running-on, aided by ellipses between the axes, knits the axes into verses, e. ${ }^{5}$.

School children : 1. Kée nna fifi la Mokwena
2. Sethibelle sa ba riodian a Tau
3. bosigo ba phutha-batho-dinao
4. e re bo se o ba phutholle

Bard : Te nna fifi la liokwena/setinibelle sa bosigo ba phutha-batho-dinao//e re bo sa o ba phutholle.

Tith the bard the pause pointing to the caesura is less noticeable. There is every indication or running-on. Perhaps children have shorter breath, but we have found then able to enulate the bard if so taught. In ordinary speech each of the lines $1,2,3$ would begin with ke ma (It is I). Io knit the data into a thought-unit there are these ellipses, without which the lines would fall apart into independent sentences. A verse is more than a breath-group of words since a single word can also be a verse. A verse is also a datum-unit; short, long, very long, uniaxial, biaxial, or polyaxial.
3.10. 7 Rhyae is not cormon in Tswana 'poetry'. There are rhythric and rhyming repetitions pointing to the possibilities of developins rhyme, such as

$$
\frac{\text { selakalaka mollô, selakalaka leithô. }}{\text { line 2) }} \text { (2.11.1, }
$$

The rhyme here, initial and end-rhyme, duly marls off the ares, and knits them into a set form: the flame that is the fire, the flame that is the eye, coming down to uxpose and destroy the witch. This form is a datum-unit, the datum-unit is a verse. There is also the rhyme of tone and sense which relates lines to each other, as in the proverb -
kgobokgobo o a ikgobokanyetsa//phatlaphatla o a iphatlalaletsa.
Kgoborsobo and phatlaphatla are contrasts and thus related in sense, besides being ideophonic repetitions, identical in duretic and tonetic features.

In other words rhyme leans heavily on the correspondence of duretics, tonetics and dymaics, besides formal correspondence. Rhyme relies also on semantic correspondence as the causative-relative morpheme (-etsa) above does, and as we saw earlier in Chapter 2.
3.10.8 Pararhymes succeed best when tonetic, duretic and semantic features renain unimpaired as with the following lines -
rraagwe a tloge ka go tlhoboga [3.6.6, lines maagwe a lele e sa le gale 6 and 7]

Although the initial consonants of these lines are not identical, the contrast relates the words; since the
consonants are both continuants and the words tonetically identical, the initial pararhyme succeeds. It appears that relationship in sense, of the pararhymed forms, is important, even as we notice also in Southern Sotho, in K.E. Ntsane's poem on World War II entitled Lemo sa 1939 -
lefatshe kaofela la hwasa, la duma,
natshwofo a batho a phahara, a uba; (Moloi, p. 38)
Where duma and uba convey the sense of fierce sound, are duretically and tonetically identical, although not identical in form, and in spite of the latter consideration have the effect on the ear of perfect rhyme. We see this as pararhyme. We hear it as sense-and-tone rhyne. And considering that indigenous 'poetry' is oral, this is to us the more important sensation - the auditory one.
3.10.9 These forms constitute the boundaries of our verses. These forms relate the verses. The relation helps detemine the stanza. Jitness for instance how the stradaling rhyme makes the lines below into an accomplished thought-unit.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Bakgetla ba re selo se mo Ditlhotlhe } \\
& \frac{\text { selo se mo kopoopong }}{\text { ba dintlha ba ntse ba se gwaisa Bakgatla }} \\
& (3.5 .23, \text { line } 7)
\end{aligned}
$$

The linking segments, selo se mo, make the first two lines separate verses, united through thought-development, whereas the last word of the third line is intended to indicate that the Bakgatla themselves are being ad-
dressed. It is not just a jingling, but a fom of address (second person) whilst the first is third person. But wat is nore, these words are boundaries of the thought-unit. These linlings and rhymes characterise our verses and stanzas.
3.10.10 It is these linking forms, these myme-words, bhese breaths, these reguler rhythas, these enjambaents, these savourings of end-words, these parallelisms with caesuras, these datum-units, this conception of such one datum as a single verse, this compression of history into a preise-word or a hate-word, that characterise the line of Tswana 'poetry', and we are inclined to the view that such a line is a Verse, and will desist from using these technical terms in speech comans.
3.10.11 This is how we sensed the renaitions of the poetry and were led to cast them in stanzas as above. We therefore find as far as our senses, the reciters motions, and our small reasoning have led us, that there are verses and stanzas in indigenous Tswana poetry, and the stanzas, inasfar as they belong together in fom, sense and intention, constitute poetry. An authority says -

A stanza is an organisation of metre and rinyme repeated throughout a poem. Mere a poet inis the development of his ideas overrestricted by such an organisation, he dispenses with stanzas and adopts a freer medium such as blank verse.
(Thomas, op.cit. p. 39).
A Tswana stanza would appear to be an organisation or a thought-unit in verse-data ohere variation of verse techniques is a comon and admirable feature.
3.10.12 It must be noted that both verses and stanzas are often of imregular length, that no rhyme schemes as such have been found although the tendencies are asserted. Te have pointed out the tendency to the short-long-short and long-short verse-feet, as well as the short-short-long-short variety ( $v-v$ and $-v$, and $v v^{-}$v respectively), and find that there is enough study in techniques in indigenous poetry to serve as a basis for an enquiry into modern compositions, that is, compositions apparently under the influence of Western Buropean languages.

Conclusion
3.11.1 We have found it entertaining to listen to the 'poetry'. We have also found it informative. But what is more, such renditions are a social institution similar to what T.S. Tliot says of English, that -

The early forms of epic and saga may have tranmitted what was held to be history berore surviving for commal entertainment only..... (Eliot, p .16 ).
3.11.2 We propose to state the poetic tendencies broadly, and on the basis of content and form, as leaning heavily to the following classes in Tswana indisenous poetry -

Epic Marrative, which con develop into Epic, cde, Satire,
Iyric, represented chiefly in song, Bpigram.

## MODERN TSWANA POETRY

## Recent Survey

4.1.1 By way of recapitulation, we view as modern, such Tswana poetry as appears to bear marks of Western European influence, as opposed to indigenous poetry, which, whether written or unwritten has been handed down from generation to generation, dressed in indigenous techniques.
4.1.2 In a recent BRTEP SURVEY OF MODERN IITERATURE IN THE SOUTH ARRICAN BANTU IANGUAGES (Limi p. 13) conducted by the Department of Bantu Languages of the Uriversity of South Africa, six short volumes of Tswana poetry and nine dramas are listed. To these could now be added the following two items of poetry since published:

Schapera, I.: Praise-poems of Tswana Chiefs,
Kopane, P.K.: Dipalwana tsa Bana, Via Afrika, 1968, (four primary school volumes - SSA - Std VI).

There are also numerous indigenous and modern poems in various class text- and reading books, and large collections of hymnals of the many religious denominations operating among the Tswana. In this field there are also to be found a fair sprinkling of sacred and secular musical compositions used mostly in schools. It seems
possible that a few sizable anthologies could be compiled with ease. There are also eight original and a few translated dramas.

## Transition

4.2.1 We pass the stage of oral to that of written literature, from that of mere declamation to that of serious reading, from that of communal enjoyment to that of study, from poetry of doubtful provenance to that of well authenticated artists, and this is important in the history of the development of a people, of its literature, since -
.... the great living are even more a part of a nation's glory than the great dead. (Boulton p. 52)

We are reaching a definite stage of development, although in a sense this is not significant development since poetry is meant to be performed. We reach a stage of development of the poet's individuality, and of the individual reader who must learn to read and to discipline himself to read fully. Some time or other a people must overcome illiteracy or emerge from only oral literacy and this is development, especially in respect of abstruse literature (as opposed to the prose language) such as poetry. An authority says of reading fully -

The time to start it is as soon as the person is old enough to experience a genuine response. With some it may not be too early at four or five, with others it may not be too late at eighty-five. (Harvey p. 14)

We pass from communal to individual composition and view this as development.
4.2.2 Yet another scholar has compared indigenous or traditional with modern Bantu poetry thus:

Traditional literature differs from modern literature not only in that it is oral but also in that it is essentially the product of communal activity, whereas work of modern literature is the result of individual effort and bears the stamp of its author. (Cope p. 24)
4.2.3 It is interesting to note that in most cases modern Tswana poetry does not come from outstanding language scholars. As with the tradjtionalists, it has been mostly a case of trial and error, and further and further practice. The influences of Western poetry that mark Tswana written poetry as modern are therefore the more interesting as gleanings.

## Probable lines of development

4.3.1 We think that the writing of poetry probably began with the collection of indigenous poetry, including it in prose works. Foremost of these prose works are school readers such as Micha Kgasi's Thuto ke eng, P.P. Leseyane's Buka ya go buisa series, and various publications of missionary bodies.
4.3.2 Following upon this stage came the inclusion in school readers, of original compositions along with indigenous works. The opportunity of comparing themes, styles and techniques offered itself. We do not claim here that such comparison was in fact intended, but there is no doubt that a lover of indigenous poetry
was most likely inspired by it to attempt composition e.g. N.G. Mokone, Montsamaisabosigo series of school readers, and once again Leseyane, Buka ya go buisa series.
4.3.3 A third stage appears to have been entered when anthologies of indigenous and modern poetry were compiled. In this field Sam. S. Mafoyane, M. O.M. Seboni and the trio Lekgetho, Kitchin and Kitchin made noteworthy contributions.
4.3.4 The final stage appears to be that of volumes of original compositions, which seem to lean heavily to the modern trend, viz. those of Raditladi, and Moroke. G.C. Motlhasedi is probably alone in a subgroup of this group. The school series of P.K. Kopane could be added to this group, while the recent publication of I. Schapera belongs to the first stage above.
4.3.5 Translation of Western European hymns into Tswana adds to the fourth stage above, that of volumes of modern poetry. This adds a distinct genre of poetry, so that translation may be regarded as a fifth line of development and growth.
4.3.6 Fully-fledged drama is not significant in oral
lore. The translation of Shakespeare's 'Comedy of Errors' by Sol. Plaatjie. in 1930 under the title

Diphoshophosho was a first attempt to introduce serious drama in Tswana. Since then translations and original works, whose poetic merits will be summarised below, have added to our literature.

## Micha Kgasi

4.4.1 Micha Kgasi (p. 5) includes in a prose work of his, the praise of a man whose spouse a woman would be proud to be, taking it from indigenous lore. It is rich in praise-names, and features linking, daring metaphor, proverb and deals with valorous character in defence of cattle and finally, what is typical of indigenous lore, an incident of intertribal contact where the Tswana hero vanquishes a Ndebele rival. In format there are twenty-five lines in one stanza. 4.4.2 In our tours this poem was rendered to us, and to facilitate comparison we record both the recorded and the oral versions here:
(i) M. Kgasi's Version (published)

1 Lefatiha la bo Mmategi
2 Letš̌ubu-tšubu la mafatiha,
3 Phefo e fatlhile ditlou selemô
4 Selemo ka kgwedi ya Matihabanaga;
5 'Ma Mme ga nkiletse ke bokwa,
6 Wa nkitse ke Legapa tshunyana
7 Ke Legorosa tšhwana,
8 Ke tla le kgwana ya meriti ya mabje
9 Ya meriti ya mabje a bo kgongwane;
10 Radiphatlhane wa ba ga kolonyane
11 Se phje kgomo setšhôtlhô Radiphatihane
12 Sé se monate sea mediwa Keketsi.
13 Motho kwa Mmamonne tšopane
14 O godile Mokukutlêla
15 Ke modimako wa bo Mamoenyana.
16 Ngwana wa dikgomo di rile di bofeletse
17 Ke sa tlhole ke feleka di huneletse
18 Di bofeletse ka kgôlê ya dikgong
19 Di bile tsa tsaya basadi tsa loka :
20 Yare ngwana wa dikgomo ka bula lesaka
21 Ka gana di tshela noka ya Tolwane
22 Ka sala ke šoka-šoka Letebele,
23
Kare: "Nala! Ya gae re laelane
24 Re laelane ka legata la motho ..... -
25 Ka legata la motho wa ga-Sebetiele".
(ii) A. Modibane's version (oral)
Legodi Komane: monna a Morolong

1. Fátiha la gabo Mmategi
2 a re nna ke letsubutsubu la mafátlha
3 a re phefo e fatlhile ditlou selemo
4 a re e ba fatlhile ka kgwedi ya matlhabathakana
5 a re nna mme ga nkiletse ke bokwa
6 a re o a nkitse ke legapatshunyana kelegorosatshwana
7 ke tla le kgwana a meriti ya gabo Kgongwana.
8 Radipatlana a gabo Kolonyane
9 a re se pshe kgomo setšhotlho Radipatiana
10 a re se se monate se a mediwa Keketsi.
11 Motho o kwa Mmamonne tsopane o godile
12 a re ke mokukutlela ke modimako a gabo Moenyana
13 ngwana a dikgomo-e-ka-re-di-bofeletswe-ka-ba-ka- se-tlhwe-ke-feleka
2. ke re di huneletswe di bofeletswe ka kgole a dikgong tsa ba tsa tsaya basadi tsa loka
15 ya re nna ngwana a dikgomo ka bula lesaka ka gana di tshela noka a Tolwane
16 ka tloga ka ba ka sala ntse ke sokasoka Ietebele
17 ka re, nalaagae re laelane
18 re laelane ka legatana la motho a kwa Sebetiele.

## Translation of Kgasi's version:

$[1$ Twin of Mmategi's family
2 storm of the twins
3 the wind blinded elephants in summer
4 summer, in the month of piercing the soil (tilling):

5 My mother does not refuse my being praised
6 she knows me, I am the looter of the whitefaced cow

I am the captor of the black cow
8 I bring the white-backed cow of the shady mountains
9 of the shady mountains of the Kgongwana's;
10 Radipatlana of the Kolonyane clan
11 don't spit the cow as a cud Radipatlana
12 what is sweet is to be swallowed Keketsi.
13 The man at Mmanonne is solid pot clay,
14 he is fully grown, is a giant
15 he is a colossus of Mmamoenyana's clan.
16 Child of the cattle were firmly tied with a thong
17 I no longer struggled since they were united, 18 wited by means of a thong used for bundling
19 they did even take women, and went straight;
20 being the child versed in cattle, i.e. brought up
in the knowledge of cattle, I did open the kraal,
21 and refused them crossing the Tolwane river
22 I remained wrestling with the Ndebele
23 I said: Comfort: of the home, let us part
24 Let us part by the skull of a man -
25 By the skull of a Zebediela mand
4.4.3 A few important differences are noticeable, not only showing how unwritten literature undergoes untold changes but also pointing to different interpretations, and even more important, pointing to the inherent power of unwritten literature of merit to go its course, alongside and in spite of varying written versions. Our
reciter, again $A$. Hodibane (3.3.1) names one Legodi Komane as subject of this poem, and this immediately makes the poem the property of a clan (a unit of tribal organisation). Kgasi omits this detail. Kgasi's lapses of spelling must be excused, but may lead to misunderstanding, e.g. ba ga kolonyane (of the Kolonyane's) where a proper name is spelt with a small letter, and so forth. It has certainly been helpful to understanding to hear the recital from an old woman who apparently knew what she was saying. Line 17 of our reciter's version certainly makes sense, while its equivalent (line 23) according to Kgasi does not, possibly owing to punctuation difficulties. The collection of indigenous literature by today's scholar could help to check and guide its oourse of development into written literature, and promote interpretation.
4.4.4 Whereas Kgasi's version is in lines (verses), as we tried to follow our reciter, we could not come to the same number of lines. Lines 1 to 5 correspond. Our reciter declaimed her line 6 with a distinct enjambment, making Kgasi's lines 6 and 7 into a biaxiel line. Kgasi's lines 8 and 9 on the other hand feature linking, ending line 8 and begiming line 9 with ya meriti ya mabje. A proper editing of this poem could very well take proper stock of these deviations, and this editing would be development. Kgasi's lines 8 and 9 are more typically Tswana than Modibane's equivalent line 7, because the former feetures linking, which is a feature of indigenous poetry.
4.4.5 We further made out three thought-units, leading to our casting our reciter's version in three stanzas. The first thought is the introduction of Legodit in praise-words, intended to characterise him. This twin brother of sister Mmategi, is a storm (letsubutsubu), has blinded elephants (that is greater characters), blinded them, according to Kgasi in summer, during the month of ploughing, (ka kgwedi ya matlhabanaga). This turbulent character is legapatshunyana and legorosetshwana, and as if to leave no doubt about the inspiration of women to men, his mother does allow him to be thus praised. The second thought is a directive to him, operating the device of suggestion, and in the process creating a proverbial expression with traditional balanced parts -
line 9 ... se pšhe kgomo setšhotlho ..
10 ... se monate se a mediwa .
The third thought is a description of his physical features which give him physical prowess. He is a compact colossus; he is a child brought up in the knowledge of cattle, which must be kept together like a bundle of wood. He leaves home comforts and goes for the skull of a Ndebele of Zebediela. Again intertribal emulation comes to the fore. Although the verses and stanzas are of irregular proportions it appears they are there all the same.
4.4.6 It has been of great help to hear the poem recited, beginning the lines with a re (he says), which demarcates the verses. The pause at the end of each line helps to demarcate even those lines that do not begin with a re e.g. Iine 14. The linking words are also helpful units of correspondence, e.g. line 17 and line 18. The main pause at the end of each thoughtunit, followed by an energetic resumption as at the beginning of the first stanza: these two features mark off the stanzas fairly safely.
4.4.7 Finally, lines 1 and 2 may help to investigate metrical excellence or a tendency thereto:

Published version:

1. Lefatiha la bo Mmategi
2. letšubu-tšubu la maratiha ... Oral version:
3. Fátlha la gabo Mmategj
4. .... Ietsubutsubu la mafátiha

By what may be called a compensatory variation, although the first word of the latter version lacks its prefixal morpheme le-, which is retained in the former version, the possessive concord of the former version also lacks its third (middle) syllable ga, which the latter version retains, with the result that the number of syllables remains eight in both verisions. Ve also find exactly what we found in Chapter 3, that the short-long-short metre alternates with the long-short, as in -

```
letsubutsubu (v-v-v)
lefatiha (v - v)/ fatiha ( \(-v\) ).
```

We also find the characteristic four-syllable Tswana foot (r r - v) :

Ia měfātıhä.
These features are not persistent, and therefore system is not claimed. But we seek tendencies. What seems to be a persistent feature, which also helps not only to point to rhythm but to mark the ending of verses, is the long penultimate syllable of every verse when declaimed.
4.4.8 The recording of indigenous poetry is development itself, and is a difficult study. The fact, for instance, that Micha Kgasi has certain pairs of lines punctuated with a comma only after the second member of a pair, thus -

```
Iefatiha la bo Mmategi
Ietšubu-tšubu la mafatlha,
```

seems to point to the possibility of these pairs being the axes of biaxial verses, thus -

Lefatlha la bo Mmategi, letsubu-tšubu la mafatlha
Phefo e fatlhile ditlou selemo, selemo ka kgwedi ya matlhabanaga.

Witness the complete equality in number of syllables per pair of axes.

Furthermore, the verse-feet or nodes in the axes of the first line match exactly in number, in order of succession and in kind, thus:


The next biaxial line is even more interesting. Again the verse-feet or nodes match exactly in number and in kind, but the second axis has the nodes in strict reverse order of succession, thus:

| phēfor | ě fãtlhīlě |  | sě̇Ēmǒ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 |

sělēmơ kǎ kgwēdi yǎ mǎtlhābǎnāgǎ

This inversion of the order of the metrical nodes or verse-feet of pairs of axes seems to be a larger scale of the inversion of the order of nodes referred to as a compensatory variation in 4.4 .7 above. We suggest that Bantu metre is systematic in its variations, its variations being at times so subtle as to disguise it. Its variations, as exemplified above, do not represent a lapse in form. They represent a rearrangement of the same basic form.
4.4.9 What can be the reason for the difference between line 4 of Micha Kgasi and line 4 of our reciter? This problem will always confront any collector of indigenous poetry. Is the departure from Kgasi's version by a contemporary bard a reasoned act? More broadly speaking, do contemporary barcis or bards from generation to generation have reasons for their changes of versions of indigenous

Iiterature? To our mind our contemporary bard is developing a style of her own. She speaks of ditlou (elephants) in line 3, and refers to these elephants in line 4 by the class 2 subjectival concord ba. This is subtle interpretation of the satire, revealing that the discomfited elephants are men. This bard is a promising satirist. In the satire, Molome, in 3.8 .8 , she refers to molome, the locust, as stupid (line 13) and continues -

I saw him they gathering it -
if we may now translate word for word. She uses the class 1 and the cless 9 objectival concords for the same character, and seems to do so persistently in satire. In the case in point the construction is Molome .... ke mone ba o gola...
This style has the effect of making the audience first feel that the language is wrong, thus ensuring the active and critical participation of the audience. The audience soon discovers its error. The style is subtle, to say the least, and points to the peculiar flexibility of Tswana.

## P.P. Leseyane

4.5.1 P.P. Leseyane samples a number of items of indigenous poetry. He stands out as one of the early collectors who attempted to contemplate poetry as a Tswana literary genre, even to define it, saying of the mabôko:

Ke "poetry" ya Batswana. Ka sebôkô go
galalediwa motho yo o itlhagisitseng mo
bathong ba bangwe ka tiro nngwe ya bonatla, monna a tlhabanye mo ntweng ka bogale, gongwe a lole le dibatana tse di tshwanang le ditau le dinkwe, gongwe ge a bolaile seoka sengwe, tshukudu kgotsa nare. (Buka ya go buisa V \& VI p. 59)
[It is Tswana poetry. With poetry a man who has distinguished himself amongst others by some act of valour, a man who has fought a war bravely, or fought beasts of prey like lions or tigers, or who has killed some large beast such as a rhino or buffalo, is glorified.]

This is followed by a number of poems about chiefs. But to test whether traditional poetic tendencies persist throughout, we take the poem Pula (Leseyane 1938, p. 101) on a natural phenomenon, rain. Rain is personified. The figurative feature of the language of Tswana poetry is evident. The 'person' who is rain, is immediately captured in metaphor, thus:

I Mmakgomari a Mosima,
2 Podi e tsetse motshegare,
3 Potsane ya tloga ya fula;
4. Ngope tsa noka tsa sibila,

5 Ba ga Mosima ba falala.
$[1$ Mmakgomari of Mosima,
2 The goat gave birth by day,
3 The kid soon grazed;
4 The riverbeds soon reddened,
5 The Mosimas dispersed.]
Line 1 is the name of a woman (lit. mother of Kgomari, daughter of Mosima - a matriarch of the Tlokwas).

Sudaenly this is a goat. Rain mothers the tribe. It falls and fills valleys and rivers to overflowing. The Tswana say, when the sea appears empty, that is, when the water has left its normal course, that the water has gone to graze - metsi a ile go fula. The grazing of the kid, so soon after the rain has fallen, points to the waters' leaving their normal course and overflowing the riverbanks, with the result that the Mosimas dwelling on the riverbanks flee, which fleeing they welcome and teach future generations to anticipate. 4:5.2 To us this poem reads in uniaxial and biaxial lines, and in stanzas as follows:

1 Mmakgomari a Mosima -
2 podi e tsetse motshegare, potsane ya tloga ya fula
3 ngope tsa noka tsa sibila, ba ga Mosima ba falala.

4 Ba ga Rankelele-re-lapile
5 le motha a sa tsweng letsholo, ontse a re re lapile
6 wa ga raseubu-se-tlhogong, se bonwa ke mooledi
7 morunanta o a apesa
8 ke tlhagoletse mookana, ya re o gola wa ntlhaba.

9 Baloi ba lala ba bina mmitlweng,
$10 \frac{\text { ke leru la Rakgoro motlhakeng, la Rangwako a }}{\text { Madisa }}$
11 ngwako o disitse le bjale -
12 ge a bonva a se molemo kokwe o thobja a sepela.
[Iines l, 2, 3 already translated - 4.5 .1
4 Those of Rankelele-we-are-tired
5 even when he is not from the chase he continues saying we-are-tired

6 he of the gush-in-the-head, seen by the cleaner (nurse-girl):
7 the louse-killer covers it
8 I tilled for the growth of the mimosa, when it grew its thorns pricked me.

9 Witches spend the night dancing in the thorns,
10 it is the cloud of Rakgoro in the sedge, of Rengwako of Madisa
11 the one doctored against evil did tend also the girl initiates -
12 when he is found not good the beetle is deprived of his wings while alive]

Briefly the second stanza is a warning to Rankelele's clan which always pleads tired even when not from the chase. The elders of the tribe know Rankelele through and through, know even the crown of his head, since they nursed him as a baby. But now he has friends (catchers of his lice), that is, people who share his dirty tricks, and they cover his faults. The last stanza warns that there is a cloud (a gang) of witches of Rakgoro's clique. This Rakgoro belongs to the group of Madisa who is such a ngaka (doctor) that he tended girl initiates in his heyday. Now comes the generalisation: if such a one (man) is found not good, the 'beetle' is deprived of its wings while alive, that is, he is simply skinned alive. These wizards will be skinned alive so that it rains everywhere and not in the sedge only, these that are always tired when rain is to be praised or made.
4.5.3 The praise of rain consists in the first stanza only. Is this a case where the satire against Rankelple has been added to the poem on rain? Note that the man is a beetle, yet the relevant concords are personal. Is this Tswana satirical diction?
4.5.4 Once more we find that the four axes of lines 2 and 3 have each nine syllables, each three nodes. The nodes of the first axes of each pair correspond exactly. Those of the second axes correspond almost $100 \%$ 。
 /ngōpě/tsă nökǎ/tsǎ š̌ibīla // bā gǎ/mǒsīmǎ/bǎ fălālă/ As though the last node of the last axis above makes up for what is lost by the first node of the same axis, this last node has a supernumerary syllable while the first one is a syllable short of three. The last structure could be corrected thus: bǎ gābð/Mǒsĩmǎ/bă fāllă.

But absolute uniformity may not have been intended; its avoidance may have been positively calculated. The second axis of the first line above may be the variation upon the rest, showing that the basic metrical form is a long-short, short-long-short, short-short-long-short trimeter, or, it may show that the underlying metre is short-long-short, with variations, or, it may go to show that the tendency to irregularity persists, or, the last axis may show that a catalectic foot is compensated by an hypermetric foot in a verse.
4.5.5 This inversion or transposjtion of nodes, in a verse, persists in line 12 -
12. gě ǎ bōnwǎ à sě mð́lōmǒ

132
kōkwě o thhōbjă à sěpēlǎ 231

This multiformity of the nodes of a single verse persists in line 11 -
/ngwāǩ̌/ X dîsītsě/lě bjālě/

This regular irregularity works by ellipses as in Iine 10-
10. /kě lērư/ lǎ Răkgōrǒ/mơtlhǎkenǧ// ke leru lǎ Rãngwāko / ǎ Mãdīsã/.
4.5.6 We come to the conclusion that indigenous poetry as exemplified by our two early writers tends to have a recognisable structure, featuring verses with corresponding metrical nodes, varying them, inverting their order. There are verses and there are stanzas, respectively datum-units and thought-units. The verses are uniaxial and polyaxial. We find that these features persist irrespective of the subject of the poetry - man or natural phenomenon alike. The stanzas may be irregular in length.

We conclude that this first stage in the growth and development of written poetry is quite a study in the

[^7]poetic styles of indigenous poetry and was a worthwhile beginning. We find that the poetry recorded was of the best in spirit and in form.
N.G. Mokone and P.P. Ies eyane
4.6.I A younger man than M. Kgasi and P. Ieseyane could now perhaps be credited with a composition of his own, based on a traditional theme, and also included in a school prose reader, along with traditional excerpts. We refer to N.G. Mokone (p. 22), who introduces the second stage:

## Ka re tha

1 Ka re tha, ka re tha, ntha ka re tha.
2 Ke fitlhetse bana, ka re tha
3 Ba ntse maborwaborwana,
4. Ka ba botsa gore go ilwe kae,

5 Ba re go ilwe go lomegwa tlou.
6 A selo se tlou e tle e lwale?
7 E Iwala bolwetse jwa tihogo.
8 Ga se jwa tlhogo, ke jwa molala.
9 Ka re Tshipa mphe kobo.
10 Kobo tsa bogopane
11 Matshabela gotihe.
12 Ka re the, thanthatha*, ka re tha,
13 thanthatha*, ka re tha. (*Crrection of misprint thanthantha in reader)
[1 I hopped, I hopped, hopped I hopped.
2 I found the children, I hopped.
3 They sat in clusters,
4 I asked them where everybody had gone,
5 They said they had gone to bleed an elephant.
6 Does an elephant ever get sick?
7 It suffers from a head disease.
8 Not a head disease but a neck disease.
9 I asked Tshipa to give me a blanket.

10-11 Coarse blankets in which everything hides.
12 I hopped, hop-hopped, I hopped
13 hop-hopped, I hopped]
4.6.2 The above poem is in two separate but united parts. The first is in the nature of a refrain, viz. lines l, 12 and 13 which convey form. The second conveys the spirit - satire, humorous idiom, and eloquent pun. The form-giving lines feature onomatopoeia, to give a marching step to the travel represented here, to convey the story dranatically. The form-bearing refrain reminds us that in the gloom the gold gathers the light against it.
4.6.3 First of all the form. The ideophone tha (hopping like a flea) from which ve derive the verb stem thanya (to hop), in combination with other monosyllabics, lends itself readily to reflect steps. The travel is not related but created, thus:

## kǎ rě thā

This metre is varied in the seventh word by the shortlong alternant, thus:

## ňthā

The tendency is revealed here to alternate short-shortlong ( $r_{-}$) with short-long ( $\mathrm{r}_{-}$), just as we saw earlier how short-long-short alternates with long-short. The metre of line 2 is typical because it features verse-feet already found and varjed in their kind, being: ke fitlhetse ( $r r_{-v}$ ) bana ( $\quad$ v) ka re tha ( $v r_{-}$).
4.6.4 Most interesting of all is the form or metre of lines 12 and 13. The first and last nodes of line 12 have already been treated above and their metre ( $v_{-}$) noted. The middle node is a diametrically opposed foot-arrangement, being long-short-short:

## thañthà thà

This word appears again at the beginning of the last line, as if to deliberately juxtapose the metrical opposjite numbers long-short-short and short-short-long, effecting the kind of inversion of nodes already noted:
thānthäthä / ke ré tha
4.6.5 The fusion of theme (travelling) and form is abundantly evident. The anapaestic type of metre (short-short-long) with its two variants, first the iamb type (short-long), which anapaest is inverted into the dactyl type (long-short-short), show exactly how akin to real life poetry can be, how carefree and chance travel, hopping about without a particular purpose, can be represented in words as a veritable drama. He have said above that our bards are not particularly erudite scholars of language. The child of nature probably unwittingly juxtaposed the anapaest with its inversion, dactyl. He pictured the drama exactly, and we find the lines gripping to hear or read. The author thus achieves something similar in effect, to -
víoóltjies bíoú en roói
in which C.I. Leipoldt juxtaposes an amphibrach foot with its inversion, the amphimacer* in the poem "oktobermaand ${ }^{i r}$.
4.6.6 We suggest that N.G. Mokone, P.P. Leseyane and Micha Kgasi represent an older generation of literate Tswana bards from whom the younger generation could rightly be expected to learn. We also suggest that they bridge the gap between indigenous and modern poetry, representing as they do, both trends. We suggest that a critical examination of poetry contained in school readers as a special assignment might teach us how the older generation felt that indigenous poetry should be cast and punctuated, to what extent metre is possible and to what extent necessary, as also with whet intent it is employed. The metre above gives the true, humorous and lighthearted tone of the drama. It is not a decoration. It is the crystallization of an experience. It is an exploration of expression. 4.6.7 As to the spirit of this poem, it is far from simple. It is sublime. Children were found deserted, huddled in clusters as if to warm or console one another. The adults had gone to bleed an elephant. The Tswana make incisions on the legs or cheeks of people or at the ankles to draw out bad blood that

[^8]causes dizziness and other diseases. This cannot be done to a wild animal such as an elephant. The idiom go lomega tlou (to bleed an elephant) means to obtain liquor. This must be just as problematic as to obtain elephant blood. The elephant has a head disease dizziness. The elephant here refers to a man of the elephant toter who is dizzy from drinking. Hence he suffers not from a head disease but a neck disease. And this is where a pun comes in. The word molala (neck) also means a commoner, a person of low estate. This dizziness from drunkenness is at once a neck disease and a disease of persons of low estate. Didactic satire is shown here, rather obscurely. The traveller asked the child Tshipa for a blanket, any coarse blanket, as coarse as burr-weed seeds. This is further satire against people who leave their homes to children and have their visitors thus poorly received. But the blanket is matshabela gotihe everything hides in it: the children, the visitors, dirt which makes it coarse, and possibly vermin. The spirit here is violently admonitory. Elephant totemites, nay all of us, are teased out of travelling for intoxicants. The metre conveys exactly the humor of the poem, which pervades the otherwise rather serious atmosphere. We suggest that this represents a development in style.
4.6.8 P.P. Leseyane is the author who defines poetry, and has recorded the indigenous. His own composition is Boammarure (truth) (Leseyane 1943, p. 32). This is didactic poetry in four stanzas. The first stanze has seven, and the others eight lines each. The poet was at pains to employ endrhyme. In the first stanza the first four lines are successfully end-rhymed aabb. The fifth line is odd, perhaps having lost its partner in printing. The last two lines are pararhymed. The second stanza is also successfully end-rhymed in the first six lines, viz. aabbcc. The last two lines are not rhymed. IThe third stanza succeeds in the first four lines, and pararhymes the other four cded, making therefore aabbcdcd. The last stanza end-rhymes the first five lines aabcb and leaves the last three lines unrhymed. Eerhaps on a second attempt the rhymescheme would work out at aabbodcd. We do not know. But the tendency is there. There is no doubt in our mind that the lines rhymed are successfully rhymed and that Tswana has the capacity for and a tendency towards morpheme-rhyme.
4.6.9 We find here that PP. Leseyane moves away from indigenous techniques. Firstly the persistent rhyming is a complete departure. The fact that some lines do not rhyme is viewed as failure rather than excused as variation. Variations of indigenous
poetry, even that recorded by this author, are systematic. Ve contended earlier that they are not lapses but rearrangement of forms. In the poem under review we sense lapses. The other departure from indigenous techniques is in forming stanzas of equal length. In indigenous poetry irregularity seems regular. 4.6.10 And now, by what reasoning do we consider Leseyane's lines verses? Wach is a solid datumunit and the datum-units a solid thought-unit. In other words we judge first by internal content, subsequently by external forms. The first stanza, for instance, goes (we translate):
[1 This is truth greater than all things,
2 That in the whole world there is no might,
3 That can protect a person in life,
4 Jxcept to keep for ever in his heart,
5 An oath and a determination saying,
6 In all difficultjes and earthly trials,
7 I shall cling to justice and to truth.]
The poem is strongly didactic as in the third stanza, first two rhymed lines -

Tiro nngwe le nngwe e e emisitsweng godimo ga kako, Ga e kitla e ema, e phela ka boleele ba nako
[Any undertaking based on lying Shall never stand, continue for the length of time]
and in the last two unrhymed lines of the last stanza:
Noka di tla tswa melapo e e omileng, dipoa di
tswa dingope,

Mme boammarure, boammarure bo tla nna ka bosakhu-
tleng
[Rivers will turn into dry streams, veld into dongas, But truth, truth will remain for ever]

The last two verses are not rhymed but as effective as the first two above, which are rhymed.
4.6.11 We must recognise the biaxial and polyaxial verses -

Ga go motho // kapo Ielata Yo o tla bonang // mongwe a mo lata Mme a re // Kgosi ya me // Kapo lata la me ke tla go tlotla // ke go utlwa // botshelong botlhe ba me
[There is no man // or servant who will see // someone come to him and say // my master // or my servant I shall honour you // and obey you // all my life]

In the midst of his straining to compose the modern way, even the romantic way, P.P. Ieseyane retains the above forms, known to inhere in indigenous literature. We are constrained to contemplate whether it is wise or necessary or possible to compose modern poetry with complete disregard for indigenous techniques.
4.6.12 There is no metaphor in the above composition. The truth however, is stated in quotable lines showing that the poet was indeed stirred in his feelings and led to pour forth an original creation. This departure is noteworthy. There is no arguing with the reader. The truth is seen before the eyes of the poet even as he dramatically points at it in his first line. The poet is not seen defending himself or pleading his cause. The truth just rolls out in its naked form. We do not miss the figure of speech. The creation of the picture
is powerful enough imagery. P. P. Leseyane is a traditionalist and modernist at the same time. 4.6.13 Kgasi and Leseyane are our first stage, Mokone and Leseyane our second in written poetry. Indigenous-modern Publications of Poetry 4.7.1 The above stages lead us to publications of poetry in which indigenous poetry is recorded and modern compositions added in fully-fledged anthologies. We have in mind the volumes of Sam. S. Mafoyane, 酸. O. M. Seboni, and Lekgetho, Kitchin and Kitchin. Their sources and themes are legion. They praise natural phenomena, animals, birds, insects, youth, cultural institutions and goods, historical characters, and so forth. Sam. S. Mafoyane actually arranges his anthology according to themes, thus -

Nature, School and Education, History and Heroes - Chiefs, Miscellaneous, Animals, Cultural goods.
4.7.2 We propose to compare two poems of Mafoyane, one being an indigenous and the other a modern composition. Both are poems of a historical nature. No doubt Mafoyane was trying a transfer of experience. From recording the historical poem on Samoêlê, a former chief of his tribe, he composes another based on Old Testament history, viz. Moutlwiwa wa Modimo (Blkanah).

## Sam. S. Mafoyane

4.8.1 Firstly the poem Pako ya ga Samoêle (Mafoyane p. 37) - Praise of Samuel - is cast in verses, in like manmer to the modern composition, Moutlwiwa wa Modimo (Mafoyane p. 27). But whereas the latter is in ten stanzas of four lines each, the former is cast in one seventeen-line stanza. Pako ya ga Samoêlê is recorded by M.O.M. Seboni too in Maboko, Maloba le Maabane (Via Afrika, 1958, p. 13), in verses, and one stanza of seventeen lines. The differences of punctuation, spelling, vocabulary, repetitions, between Mafoyane's and Seboni's writings point to the serious problems of recording, and emphasise that recording itself by an individual for purposes of reading, is development in the direction of modern poetry.
4.8.2 The history of Elkanah is recorded in stanzas which are clearly thought-units, as summed up hereunder:
[1. Old couple, Elkarah and Hannah.
2. Prayer for a child. Their promise.
3. Birth of Samuel. Thanksgiving.
4. According to promise, Samuel given to prophet
5. Prophet Eli brings him up perfectly.
6. Of an evening Samuel awakes from a deep sleep.
7. A voice calls. He thinks it is Eli's.
8. Bli says he must answer, 'Speak Lord, thy servant listeneth'.
9. In his sleep the voice rouses him again.
10. Let us be awaiting the call like Samuel.]

The awareness of this history in thought-units, however, was not transferred to the handling of the indigenous
poem. In this respect the revision of published indigenous poetry might be further developed by being organised in thought-units, since it has them. Pako Ya ga Samoêle divides into three thought-units, thus:

1. Rhinoceros from Matsiloje; sharp-horned.
2. He is greeted. He is either a lion or tiger, if he could jump over the heads of Matsiloje's people and return home without their being able to stop or even see him. (Matsiloje is a Barolong settlement in Botswana, and like the Bafokeng begging Setšhele to return from Botswana to the Transvaal parent tribe, Samoele is acclaimed for returning to the Thaba Nohu parent tribe in the Free State.)
3. Didactics : if a lion, don't bite; if a tiger draw in your claws, else they will trim them.
4.8.3 The last poem mentions Samoêlê nowhere by name: It is charged with metaphor. Yet this is not evident in the composition of Moutlwiwa wa Modimo. The latter is simply a story, and might as well have been left in the Old Testament, since composition means creating a picture other than that of the source itself. Even placed side by side, wafoyane's indigenous and modern compositions apparently do not influence each other, showing once more that mutual influence must not be taken for granted.
4.8.4 In Moutlwiwa wa Modimo end-rhyme is attempted. The attempt is however inferior, e.g.
4. Go ne go na le monna

A bidiwa Elekane:
Khumagadi e le Hana;
Ba godile ba tšofetse

We take it that the final -e of Elekane and tšofetse is intended to rhyme, even as the final -na of monna and Hana do. Similarly the final -a of Rara and ruta in the second stanza, as well as the final -ne of Mosimane and -nê of Enê. The assonance is not always successful as where Samoêlê rhymes with itumetse in stanza 3 , and the vowels $\hat{e}$ and $e$ (low mid-front and semi-closed front) do not rhyme. This applies to mosimane and Ene where the end-syllables -ne and -nê do not rhyme, and we are therefore not able to find syllable or morpheme rhyme. We must view this attempt at rhyming against our finding of morpheme rhyme earlier on. It means that the forms that appear to rhyme here, are in fact not units of correspondence, and therefore do not help to make Mafoyane's lines into verses, a further reason why this poem is not a successful creation.
4.8.5 On the contrary Pako ya ga Samoêlê is charged with alliterative forms, repetition of words and phrases. These creations bear testimony of original composition. Their combination of the metaphorical and the didactic makes the creation quotable.

Alliteration:
Tshukudu ya malatsane o laditse
o tihokoditse Ionaka lo ntse lohibidu

- lo tihokoditse fe o tswa Matsiloje
[ Rhino that misses a turn you have missed you sharpened the horn it is red
you sharpened it when you came from Matsiloje]

The number of voiceless alveolar affricates (ts) speaks for itself, whilst conveying among other things, the praise-word malatsane (one who skips a turn, i.e. one who omitted to come home when expected, but did eventually come).

Repetition:
[The same who skipped his turn to come home did so to advantage: he sharpened his horn:]
o tlhokoditse lonaka ....

- lo tlhokoditse ....

This repetition, with further alliteration, is not a mere decoration, but the creation of a spectacle. Imagine the sharp, red horn of a 'rhino', ready to gore any that attempted to take over the parent tribe or stop the return of Samoêle. The jump from Matsiloje in Botswana to Thabe Johu was supernatural, witch-like imagery:

Ie go mmona ga be ka ba mmona
[not even to see did they see him]
The repetition of mmona (see him) emphasizes the wonder, without description.

## Didactics

We note that Mafoyane's modem composition ends didactically, as does the indigenous poem. Is this now coincidence or development? We learned earlier
that indigenous poetry features data leading to a generalisation, and this is true of both poems. There is however deeper searching in the indigenous didactics - which being metaphorical, continue to create - than in the modern didactics where we are given a straight-forward telling what to do. All in all, no effort is needed to understand our modern poem. The opposite is true of the indigenous one.
4.8.6 It seems fair to suggest that while juxtaposing indigenous and modern poetry, Mafoyane neither leamed the spirit and form of iswana traditional poetry nor himself originally conceived it, or else he did so poorly. The recording of enough material, however, to fill 83 pages in book form, is development in the practice of poetry.
4.8.7 The above tendency is true of the whole of Mafoyane's work. His Pula ( p .7 ) can bear no comparison in point of imagery and structure with the indigenous item discussed above in 4.5 .2 et seq. It is merely telling that the sun rose in a clear African sky, much praised (this sky) by strangers; during the day clouds gathered, houses were closed, it showered, and so forth. He starts the poem Maru (clouds) metaphorically in the first line (p.2) Kobo ntlê ya godimo [fine blanket of the heavens]
but immediately stops creating, starts and continues to tell about clouds. Mafoyane is a story-teller. His Khunwena (p. 79) is also a report on the first Barolong village known to him: wealth, herdboys, the Ndebele interference referred to in the incident we cited in 3.6.3, and so forth. One is inclined to feel that Mafoyane is not a thinker. His Sekgatla Merafe (Afrika - p. 70) is simply like Khunwana, a land loved by many even from overseas. It has minerals and scenery and later trains. His Mogale le legatlapa (Brave hero and Coward), p. 65, relates of a fire on a farm being extinguished by a woman, and boys being punished for failure to extinguish it, the woman being thanked for extinguishing the fire. We just leam stories. Poetry is in the traditional items in Mafoyane's volume.
M.O.M. Seboni
4.9.1 Seboni's volume, Maboko, maloba le maabane (1949), is also an anthology of indigenous poetry, along with his own compositions. In our view this is an excellent arrangement, provided the compiler intends that what is best in the indigenous 'poems' be used in the modern ones, especially where like themes are treated. In such cases any decline of standard in modern composition is rightly viewed as a serious lapse, and any effort to raise the level of penetrating thought, and form, at least to that of the traditional, is appreciated.
4.9.2 We attempt an appreciation of two poems with the themes of natural phenomena, one being indigenous and the other a modem composition. The poem Letsatsi (Seboni p. 39) is indigenous, and we find:-
(a) At no stage is the sun mentioned by its name.
(b) By way of imagery the sun is personified as $\frac{\text { Ngwako, }}{\text { evils. }}$ one thoroughly doctored against
(c) Prom the behaviour of 耼gako we deduce that the subject is the sun -
holding a bundle of spears, broadcasting the spears, some spears inflicting pain, others giving pleasure, some bringing wealth, others destitution that is how Ngwako distributes his gifts; feared by young and old. Yóu come face to face with him: Byes water if people do so Since that means looking into the very eye of God.

Here is some deep thought. Here is some solid imagery. Fithout figures of speech imagery suffers, without imagery thought becomes shallow; without deep thought, there is no spirit.
4.9.3 Compare the above with the 'modern' composition. Mola wa godimo (p. 54). There is a call to children to look at beauty against the belly of the heavens - Mpeng ya magodimo. Immediately the solution to the problem is offered, unfortunately -

Nha ga ke bone sepe
Fa e se mebalabala,
Mebala e yothelele
Mo motsheng wa badimo
[I see nothing but lots of colours, all the colours, on the rainbow].

If we must learn from Dilot's objection that
Shekespeare baffles and liberates, Milton is perspicuous and constricts (Eliot p. 150)
here is no baffling thought. There is no imagery, no depth of thought.
4.9.4 Reference is made to the rainbow as one of the wonders of the Creator of life. This certainly opens a contemplation of the Almighty, although not requiring any thought effort, being a sheer releting of fact -

Nngwe ya dikgolgamatso
tsa Motlhodi wa Botshelo.
[One of the wonders of the Creator of life]
4.9.5 To the very end the indigenous poem is metaphorical, as when it ends with eyes watering because of looking into the very eye of God. We are made to search for who Ngwako is in the sky, and there we do find a phenomenon comparable to the carrying of a bundle of spears, distributing them, and so forth. To the Tswana the sun is the eye of God. To the end the modern composition lacks creation and invites no thought, while offering no entertainment. Poetry is specialised communication and our bard misses his boat here. An authority says:
.... Sometimes art is bed because communication is defective, the vehicle inoperative; sometimes because the experience communicated is worthless; sometimes for both reasons. (Richards 1962, p. 199)

Poetic experience of the rainbow should be as fascinating as that of the sun: the difference is in the communication here.
4.9.6 Let us test whether Seboni gains in inspiration and his poetry in spirit in his works of a historical nature. Again we propose to compare on indigenous with a modern number, viz. Setšhele I with Barutwana be ga Jabavu (pp. 10 and 26 respectively):

Ieboko la ga Setšhele wa ntlha
[1. Ke motšhatšha mogakatsa mala,
2. yo go tweng noga e kgolo ya noka tse dikgolo,
3. E go tweng e kile ya tsosetsa bangwe kgwanyape,
4. Ya re Bakgatla ya ba tsosetsa phefo,
5. Ngwane wa Iekone a tshaba a sutlha,
6. A tshaba ki thako di le letsogong.
7. Ngwale boela yoo o mmokile,
8. O boka o sa itse ina ja gagwe
9. Ina ja gagwe ke matsodimatsoke.
[l. He is the purgative that stimulates the stomach,
2. the big snake of the big rivers,
3. of which is said it once raised a tornado against
4. causing the Bakgatla only a wind,
5. so much so that the Nguni child fled and emigrated,
6. running with his sandals in his hand.
7. Virgin, let alone that one, you have praised him.
8. You praise but do not know his name.
9. His name is abstruseness.]
4.9.7 Once more there is no mention of Setshele by name. As a result the poem belongs to all time and to all characters of a frightening nature. One could even submit that this poem knows no tribal borders. It is universal thought and experience.
4.9.8 The metaphor, ke motshatsha [he is the strong purgative] is an excellent creation. This is a purgative that makes bowels work. In Tswana slang the idiom exists that one's bowels work when one is frightened or given a beating : O tla tš̌hwege - you will purge - means you will get a beating. The poet of yore knew the oral lore of his people and had sufficient creative power to polish his slang into socially acceptable idiom motšhatšha mogokatsa mala
[purgative which stimulates the bowels].
Typical of the indigenous poet, he shows his resourcefulness by varying his metaphors, and so the second line refers to this motšhatšha - purgative - as:
noga e kgolo ya noka tse dikgolo
[big snake of the big rivers ].
This suggests that the subject may be a crocodile totemite, since the crocodile is a big reptile that lives in big waters. There is a connection between the two metaphors since the sight of a big snake is so frightening as to make the bowels work. This is good imagery, certainly different from and better than simply relating that a snake is frightening to see. This big snake discriminates between peoples, causing some a tornado, certain others only a wind. The character evidently purges its environs of everybody except the Bakgatla, who are however under its influence - phefo [wind]. The Nguni had to emigrate. The allusion is apparently to the Ndebele who trekjed North to Rnodesia and the

Kgatla who remained in Botswana with the Kwena of Setshele. There is however no telling : this is poetry, and not history.
4.9.9 Finally, as with all the indigenous poems in this volume, the bard ends by apostrophising. He addresses a virgin who is nowhere, saying -

Ngwale boela ....................
............... matsodimatsoke (lines 7, 8, 9).
In 2.8.10 above we quoted a definition of apostrophising. We saw that it may have as its purpose such social attributes as praise (laudatory), admonition (adm monitory), suggestion (suggestive). And we now find here that it has as purpose the expression of modesty, also a necessary social attribute. The bard does not claim to exhaust the praises which set forth the character of Setshele. Character is reconditely referred to here as a name -Ieina, abbreviated ina, hence:
9. Ina ja gagwe ke matsodimatsoke
[his name is perfect abstruseness ]
should mean that his character is too complicated to explain. We observed direct apostrophising, when the bard addresses some outside personality, and inverse apostrophising when an outside personality addressed the bard as when the gods answered his divining questions. We judge the apostrophising in the poem under review as direct apostrophising with the purpose of expressing and teaching modesty. The
spirit of the short poem is grand and we may now proceed to assess Seboni's own parallel composition.
4.9.10 The title Barutwana ba ga Jabavu straight away reveals its subject, as would be expected in essay writing, and this represents a complete departure from the indigenous style which is so recondite. There are seven stanzas, pages 26-27, translated as follows:

1. Where were three of us, Kgware, Seboni, Moloto and Mongala's daughter
2. Before us stood a colossus with horns growing in all directions, a Latin teacher, a Bantu language teacher.
3. There were three ethnic groups or language groups, taught law by Jabavu, arguing with him at Rammutla (Port IFare) College.
4. Those were good days, youngsters remaining at home, laws being obeyed, in the lovely Canaan, the schools.
5. We thank the giants of Rammutla College who gave us high positions. Mongala's daughter did well and married one Habedi.
6. All four of us (including Habedi) led schools. Boys and girls grew to qualify as medical doctors.
7. Oh, that I could become a child again and learn with my friends of those days! Fellow-workers are dangerous. Even as they laugh they have a spear hidden under their clothes.
4.9.11 Out of a total of twenty-nine lines, only seven, that is a quarter, rise above the level of relating in plain and straightforward language, what actually happened. We refer to the first two lines of the second stanza -

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Fa pele ga rona go eme segokga, } \\
& \text { Go eme petleke wa malemela gotihe }
\end{aligned}
$$

[Before us stood a giant, one with horns spreading out in all directions]
and to the closing stanza -
INtla nka bowa ka nna monnye
Ka rutwa le ditsala tsa me tsa jale:
Tsala jwa mo tirong bo a bolaya,
Wo tho a tshega rumo a le fitlhile,
A le fitinile rure ka fa kobong:
[On: that I could become a child again and learn with my friends of those days! Priends in service are deadly. As they laugh they conceal a spear under their clothes]

These examples present some depth of thought. The versatility of the lecturer is not told, but presented in the form of a character whose horns grow out in all directions. The faithful friendship of youth is not related but implied. Unfaithful comradeship in service is ably pictured : a laughing comrade with a spear under cover. This is creation. This is poetry.
4.9.12 Seboni is therefore not at all void of tendencies to achieve spirit in his compositions. But, like liafoyane, he canot be credited with having juxtaposed indigenous and modern compositions with a view to taking the best out of either into the other. We aduit that this need not always be done. After all we leamed earlier (Chapter 1) that an important quality of poetry is originality. The originality however, could rightly be expected not to be inferior to what has been, especially when presented in juxtaposition. We suggest that the type of anthology of

Seboni, Mafoyane and Lekgetho, Kitchin and Kitchin, is in fact an important and necessary contribution towards the growth and development of Tswana poetry. 4.9.13 In 4.9.8 above we observed that the bard does well who takes cognisance of the oral lore of his language. It is therefore fair to expect that both Seboni and Mafoyane could have show knowledge of distilled expressions for certain of the concepts they handled, in order to maintain depth of thought. Both include the poem on the rainbow - Mola wa godimo - but neither employs the riddle for the rainbow, or creates one, e.g.:

Ngwale a tlhoma ditlhako, ngwako a
iphimola keledi, mabala tlaang le bone.
[The virgin stood on her feet, the one doctored against evil, that is, the sun, as stated in 4.9.2, wiped off a tear, the colours, come and see]
4.9.14 The Tswana believe that the rainbow stops rain and enables the sun to shine. This is presented with the creation that Ngwako wiped off his tears. The beauty of the rainbow is not related but presented as a beautiful virgin, ngwale. The colours : just come and see!
4.9.15 The employment of Iswana oral lore lends itself to vast exploitation. Supposing instead of describing Koloi, the wagon, page 51 et seq., as: ramaotwana ramatsatsarapana
[the wheeled one, the one with high and slender wheels ],

Seboni (p. 51) had employed the riddle below, would he not have achieved deeper thought?

Nkutona ke foufetse, ba-na-Ie-matlho ntshwareng.
[I am a blind wether, you who are sighted, lead me] Seboni shows a strong leaning to TELIJING. He does not mirror. He does not create. He does not appear to contemplate the traditional material in hand. Witness again the metrical excellence of the riddle above. Most traditional poetic material is indeed in some recognisable poetic form or tends to be. Our riddle features two nodes in either axis, one node containing three and the other five syllables. The order of the nodes is inverted, $3,5 / / 5,3$, thus:

| nkǔtonǎ kě foǔfētsé |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| 3 | 5 |

bănålěmātiho ntshwǎrēnǧ.
5

$$
3
$$

T.G. Wokone (4.6.1) might have been influenced by this device of indigenous poetry in his modern composition where he inverted and juxtaposed nodes.

Iekgetho, Kitchin and Kitchin:
Boswa jwa Puo (enlarged edition, 1961)
4.10.1 By a tripartite effort, a bulkier volume was produced than any of the two treated above, viz. Boswa jwa Puo - The Heritage of Language. The title immediately whets one's appetite. There are twenty-eight roems of chiefs collected by J.M. Lekgetho in Part one; thirtyone poems collected/composed by Moabi S. Kitchin, covering
historical personalities, e.g. David Livingstone, natural phenomena, chiefs, animals. including birds, religion, in Part two; and forty poems collected/ composed by Neo H. Kitchin, covering chiefs, historical figures such as General J.C. Smuts, social relations, as well as metaphysical items such as Ditshoswane : barwa seoposengwe Ants : sons of unity, which teaches unity as King Solomon taught industry, saying:

Ea kwa choshwanen, wèna mmoduhadi; u
akanyè mekgwa ya eona, me u tlhalehe
(Diane 6: 6-Moffat Bible)
[Go to the ant thou sluggard, consider her ways and be wise .....

$$
\text { Prov. } 6: 6]
$$

4.10.2 In the Introduction to this volume, the Rev. A. Sandilands captures the spirit of the volume by saying:

Trom West African music and rhythm, slowly combining, over bitter years of slavery, with European forms of scale and harmony, came the slave songs and hymns, the 'Negro Spirituals'. Something akin is emerging here in Africa, and this book represente a stage, an aspect, of that process.
(p. iii)

There has been a process of development, there have been stages and aspects, and now something 'akin' to the 'combining' of 'Turopean forms' and African forms 'is emerging here'. This is valuable testimony of growth and development. Occasionally the compilers state the sources of their collections, which is helpful historically. However we evaluate the poems as
such, we leave historical background to historians. We believe with others that -
. die oordrewe aandag aan biografie
sometimes is
die fase van lykbesorging. (Venter pp. 142-3)
This stand is even more important for Tswana indigenous poetry where claims of authorship are generally doubtful.
4.10.3 We find longer poems here than in either of the two volumes attributed to M.O.M. Seboni and Sam. S. Mafoyane, The first poem, Bareki (a chief bearing that name), has 162 lines. The imagery of Bareki is outstanding and sustained to the end, showing that it is intended, it is part of the composition, it is the composition itself. This imagery is conveyed in the metaphorical praise-names that seem to constitute the thought content, e.g. stanza 2:

Tshukudu ya Matima-kgabo kgalema
Ukgalemele Baamotlharo ba eme.
Re utlwa go twe Janki o a golegwa, Re tle re tsene mo gwafeng ja gago. (p.3)
[Rhino of the Matima-kgabo - flame extinguishers - age-set, roar,
Roar that the Tlharo people arise.
We learn Janki is being taken captive,
We would like to fight under your direction]
4.10.4 If the name tshukudu - rhino - does not necessarily recall brave deeds accomplished, it suggests them, which is the great value of the praise. But the next stanza clearly points to past deeds where Bareki conquered the Bakgothu and is praised -

```
Iegata-kgomo le gatile gorataro,
Le gatile Bakgothu re a robala .... (p. 4)
```

[Trampler of the cow trampled six times, trampled the Bakgothu and now we sleep/are at ease.]
4.10.5 Bareki's character is clearly portrayed in practically every stanza. The stanzas feature praisenames which are elaborated in the stanzas. Bareki is a statesman of great stature, not an exterminator but a converter of peoples -

Phetudi-a-dichaba! U fetotse Bakgothu
Gare thole re thhokalana mafoko (p. 4)
He has influenced the Bakgothu and they are now on speaking terms with the Batlharo. But this does not end here, he is not a disperser of his victims but a gatherer, a nation-builder:

Makgobokanye o' phutha dichaba
U phuthile Maboko re mokewana
[Gatherer who assembles nations
You have collected the Mabolro and we are now a group]

Bareki is fiercer as a warrior. He is personally a fierce fighter likened unto lightning -

Iogadima Iwa ga Mantreke (p.6)
[Iightning of Mantreke]
4.10.6 Again the hero is associated above rather with his mother than his father, showing how much the Tswana believed that behind their heroes were strong women. Mantreke means Hendrik's mother. But he is not a lightning that simply destroys. Rather, he is one that frightens recalcitrants into submission. Even the closing stanza highlights Bareki's statesmanship:

```
Setlhare se medile mono Tsoe,
Moruti wa sone o kwaiwa Kudumane.
Bakgothu ke nyena 10 tholang 10 se palame,
A e tlaa re lo se pagologa a lo tlaa fofa? (p. 9)
```

[A tree har grown at Tisoe; its shade is seen
from Kuruman; You, Bakgothu, who ever
climb into it, when you climb down, will
you fly? ]

Bareki is a tree safer to sit under than climb into. He is at peace with those who place themselves under his reign. The metaphor is gripping. Bareki dare not be fought because the spear he personally wields -
Le thabile Bakgothu ba le bararo,
Wa bone ja mo fatola mokotle. (p. 5)
[it stabbed three Bakgothu and geshed the fourth one's back ].

Gaetsietse is vainly planning an attack on Bareki. He hesitates and postpones it to July (Phukwi), then to April (Moranang). He resorts to divination -

Ba tshela bola jwa mathe baa-aka:
Yo' Bareki ga' ka a umakediwa tlhabano. ( $\mathrm{p}, 7$ )
[They pretend to be divining, they lie: That one, Bareki, is never to be threatened with war, ]

Bareki is the statesman that befriended the Whites. He is a Motswana who used his charms too:

$$
\frac{\text { O tshubile pheko ngogola, Bareki }}{\text { Modisa wa Maburu le Makgowa. (p. 8) }}
$$

Bareki was to his neighbours an icy South wind. The Bushmen and Bokgothu took refuge underground in holes When they heard of his approach. This can be pure imagination, with a grain of history, it can be fact (at least partially) or suggestion, but it makes poetry, it positively builds a national spirit, it entertains as it satirises the weaker or cowardly tribal groups.
4.10.7 Against the background of the poem just reviewed we briefly examine General Smuts. Smuts is also referred to by praise-names in the same manner as Barelri, thus -

Pudumo ya dikgwa tsa Tshwane le Gauteng: (p. 93)
[Blue wildebeest of the forests of Pretoria and Johannesburg ]

Ka u le Talela-lorole, u le Tshukudu e tona
(p. 93 )
[Since you are a watchman of dust, since you are the great rhino ....]

Once more Talela-lorole is a creation based on idiom. Olorole - you cause dust - means you are in the habit of starting troubles. Smuts is pictured, not described, as a harmless wildebeest lying peacefully until somebody else starts up dust, whereupon he will show himself as a big rhino. He was born in peace times (stanza 3) and will keep his peace until ....

U sa le u tsalwa lefatshe le iketla, Podi e tona e tsamaya e thwantsha mesifa; Dikamela tsa ia tsa khutlela go belega
Pelesa ya ntshiwa mogala ya kgaolwa segaba-mpa (p.94)
[You were born when the world was a.t peace The he-goat grew until its ankles crackled when it walked;

Camels stopped serving as beasts of burden
Pack-oxen got discharged and their girths were snapped.]

The Kaiser could testify if he were not secretive, that -
"Tlhare seo Senkgane, senkgela batho, Se tihomilwe jalo go nkgela ditseno" (p. 94)
[That tree has a repellent scent, it repels people, it has been planted to repel madcaps]
4.10.8 Here is a metaphor of a tree. We had another
in the last stanza of Bareki. Probably in the present volume we enter a stage of development where the compilers transfer their understanding of the techniques of indigenous poetry to the modern compositions. This confirms the Rev. Sandilands' submission in 4.10 .2 above that 'this book represents a stage', a further stage of development in fact than that represented by Rafoyane and Seboni.
4.10.9 History is only alluded to as in indigenous poetry, and not related as by a historian, e.g.

Mogakabe, wa palama lotlharapa phakela,
Wa tlharapa ka bogosi o sa tsaya chaka; ... (p. 94)
[Black and white crow, you ascended the dry branch of a tree early,
you branched off with the government without a sword; ]

This alludes to Gen. Smuts's victory in taking over the leadership of government in September 1939 from Gen. Hertzog over the 1939 war issue. The black and white crow is the picture of the general in parliamentary attire, while the dry branch is the premier's rostrum. we conclude that this poem clearly suggests a trend, namely, the composition of modern poetry in the spirit, conceptions, and techniques of indigenous poetry.
4.10.10 Original compositions on cultural creations are featured and combine indigenous and modern techniques too. We have in mind Koloi ya Molelo, the train, for instance, also referred to by praise-names, metaphorical as well as descriptive. In reading this poetry all senses are exercised. One sees the milliped that glides along the steel road, the carrier-by-night that carts for poor and rich. In the previous paragraph J.C. Smuts's character was observed by the olfactory sense senkgane senkgela-batho. General smuts was a gatherer of people, Bareki also was, and now the train is phutha-dichaba o beile batho mokawana (p. 83)
[gatherer of nations has placed them in a group]. There is no doubt in our mind that the poets here have learned from indigenous poetry and we recall our closing
remark in 4.6.11 that it might not be wise or necessary or even possible to compose Tswana poetry successfully in disregard of indigenous techniques.
4.10.11 The subjects of this poetry are widely varied. The wailing of the donkey is a strong appeal to the S.P.C.A. and to christian sentiment, ending:

$$
\frac{\frac{\text { Beng ba me, a ko lo mpeele dipelo }}{\text { Barena ba me, nngotlelang dititeo }}}{\frac{\text { Mkile ka ma pitse ya Morena, }}{\text { A fologa ka nna Jerusalema }}}
$$

The donkey is referred to as 'long-eared one' -
Tsebeditelele. The reader has to deduce from the picture and the allusions that the subject is a donkey. We have noted earlier that this is how indigenous composition works. Oux modern composer employs this technique, which Mafoyane and Seboni did not do. Te translate the above quotation before proceeding to analyse form:
[My masters, be patient with me, My lords, reduce my chastisement. once I was the Lord's horse, He went down on me to Jerusalem]

The uniaxial feature of the third and fourth lines, the biaxial form of the first and second lines: these speak for themselves. Like indigenous poetry this poem varies the form of the verses. There is no rigidity of form. An attempt at a rhyme-scheme is evident, which in the above stanza succeeds only as a pararhyme. Quite evidently, with further chiselling, Moabi Kitchin could
do with all the stanzas what he did with the second and the fourth. These last feature an accomplished aabb scheme, thus:

Diphologolo di sireleditswe,
Kafa go nna molao o repisitswe;
Ba me barena ba ntira go rata -
Go sita kang le one malata tota. (p. 70)
[Animals are protected With regard to me the law is lax; My lords do with me as they like What if even servents do!]
4.10.12 The morpheme-rhyme above is accomplished. What is more,in point of tonetic and duretic elements the rhyme is perfect. Two forms that rhyme correspond in meaning, and the other two do not, in the lines above. We find both styles in the anthology under consideration, as we find in Kgwedi ya Phatwe (the month of August), page 75 , fourth stanza as against the rest for instance. There are unmistakable signs of both the indigenous and the modern trends in this anthology. Neo Kitchin also rhymes successfully, expressing the sheep's appreciation of protection from the fox by the dog -

```
Ke thusiwa fela ke ntša,
Ka Monkgwe oa e tshaba,
O na a tlaa re nyeletsa,
Ka ke monna wa go tlhaba. (p. 103)
[I am helped only by the dog
since the fox fears it,
he would exterminate us
since he is a man who slaughters]
```

4.10.13 This last poem is very simple. But it is not just telling either. We are confronted with a sheep counting its blessings - in the simple way of a simple and tame animal. This is creation. In like manner, according to Moabi Kitchin, the fox counts its misfortunes, such as -

Ga ke bewe sebete, Monkgwe wa diphologolo: Le fa go dutsweng gone, go dutswe fela ka nna Monkgwe wa dibatana! Ke ntshitswe duso-logolo Ga twe le ke le bathong, mokgwa ke gana ka one. (p. 52)
[I am hated, Fox of the animals: Even where they are seated, they talk about me Fox of the beasts of prey! I am ever revealed It is said even were I among people, my manner I keep]

The poet is straining to employ end-rhyme, while faithful to the technique of parallelism. The pararhyme n-na/one may be attributable to a misprint or a deliberate variation. But the effort to rhyme is evident. 4.10.14 People are also urged in poetry, to emulate the ant in unity. The drama of ant life is simply presented -

```
Di raletswe ke noga e sa itse,
E itlhoma e ka di pitlelela
Tsa e fatalalela jaaka pitse
Di se na sepele e betlelela. (p. 107)
```

[A snake cut across them not knowing Thinking it could crash them, They pulled like horses Not bothered even if it made a wry face.]

In perfect abab rhyme, which is sustained right through this poem of Neo Kitchin, in a logical sequence of events, this drama is seen and contemplated intellectually. The snake thought. Its face got wry. How many snakes are there not in life that 'thought' likewise, were attacked likewise, and likewise turned wry! The meaningful title of the poem is Ditshoswane - Darwa seoposengwe: (p. 106) [Ants, sons of unity].
4.10.15 We have referred to the Kitchin brothers and not to the other co-author, J.In. Lekgetho. Lekgetho contributed part one, indigenous poetry, e.g. Bareki, already discussed. It is he who organised Bareki and other poems in stanzas and verses, features which he learned from \#estern European poetry, without sacrificing indigenous form and spirit. All told, the trio towers in the category of poets who record indigenous poetry and place it alongside their own compositions. On the whole these poets bring us nearest to modern trends, while retaining indigenous techniques. So far these authors have had the greatest success in filling old bottles with fresh wine. They not only recorded indigenous poetry, but understood its spirit and form. Hore on Form
4.11.1 The inherent boundary of a verse is sense. Sensible phrasing is the basis of verse structure. On this basis we contended that line 23 in 4.4.2(i) makes no sense, since nala (comfort) is separatal from its
qualificative ya gae (of the home). On this basis we accepted line 17 of $4.4 .2(i i)$ as conveying full sense. Similarly, lines 13 and 14 of $4.4 .2(i)$ can bear comparison with the corresponaing lines 11 and 12 of 4.4 .2
(ii). Let us cast these lines here:

13 Motho Kwa Mmamonne tsopane
14 O godile mokukutlêla
15 Ke modimako wa bo Mamoenyana.
Firstly, certain phrases must remein intact as follows:
Subject : motho kwa Mmamonne : the man at Mmamonne
Predicate: (ke) tsopane : (he) is solid pot clay

- godile : (he) is full-grown
(ke) mokuluutlêla : (he) is a giant
(ke) modimako : (he) is a colossus
Qualificative: wa bo Mmamoenyana : of Mmamoenyana's clan.
4.11.2 It is understendeble that phrases will not be of the same length, but of irregular lengths. Hence, intemally a verse has its inequalities, especially where only sense and not necessarily metre is a conscious determinant. The grouping of the phrases into verses differs from performer to performer, even as in the field we came across a reciter whose lines differed from those above (4.4.2(ii.)). The fact is that all the phrases remain intact in both renderings. our rule should therefore be that any reading of poetry which violates natural speech is likely to be faulty. Therefore an effort has to be made, to understand Tswana phrasing. Then, whether you read as under (a)
or (b) or (c) or (d) hereunder you still have a legitimate verse each time -
(a) Motho kwa Mmamone / tsopane/
(b) Motho kwa Imamonne / tsopane/o godile/
(c) Ifotho Kwa Mmamonne / tsopane / o godile/mokukutiêla
(d) Motho kwa Imamonne / tsopane / o godile / mokukutiêla / modimako wa bo 'Mamoenyana/. While keeping phrases and nodes intact, recorders may find different verses, but not capriciously. These phrases constitute a study. There are predicative ones among them. Some of these have their predicative formatives, others not, e.g.
tsopane for ke tsopane
as against
- godile, which cannot be sensibly rendered without the predicative concord o . It is not correct Iswana to start a datum with a form whose predicative formative is lacking. For instance we could not start any verse with -
tsopane, meaning 'he is pot clay'.
The internal ellipses knit the axes together in this manner.
4.11.3 What we have said above goes for modern poetry too, and as already stated, accounts for the irregularity of verses. An instance from our poem culled from San. S. Mafoyane's volume revieved in 4.8.2 above should suffice -

```
            Moutlwiwa wa Modimo (p. 27)
            Stanza 1
/Go ne go na le monna/
/A bidiwa Elekane:/
/Yhumagadi e le Hana,/
/Ba godile / ba tsofetse/
[There wes a man
he was called Elkanah;
The wife was Hannan
They were grown up, they were aged.]
```

Correct phrasing is maintained. But there would be no harm in rendering the first two lines as one -

Go ne go na le monna / a bidiwa Elekane/,
or the last line as two different verses, for purposes of emphasis, ceremony or solemnity:

Ba godile
Ba tsofetse
as long as the phrasing is maintained intact.
4.11.4 On the other hand, we are not inclined to accept the mould of the seventh and eighth stanzas:

## Stanza 7

```
lines 3 A ithaya o bidiwa
    and 4 Ke Eli, Mo-mo-godise.
```

[He thought he was called By Bli, his guardian $]$

The descriptive ke Eli belongs with the verb o bidiwa. Even if it meant having only three lines in this stanza, lines 3 and 4 above might with profit have been one line only -

```
A ithaya/0 bidiwa/ke Ili/Momogodisi/.
```

If it means something to the eye to have an equal number of lines, such lines should yet bring the truth out correctly. It might have helped here if line 4 had not started with a capital letter. This is a difficult task and it is to the credit of the author that there is no punctuation mark at the end of line 3 , which suggests that he sensed that lines 3 and 4 belonged together. By similar reasoning one finds that the last word of line 3 of the eighth stanza belongs together with the first word of line 4, thus:

Bua Morena .....
[Speak Iord .....]
This phrase is a whole, and splitting it runs the risk of being misunderstood, for instance to mean 'speak and say, 'Lord''.
4.11.5 The above are not the only forced forms in this poem. The rhyme of the seventh stanza is an assault on the intention. The last substantive, mo-mogodise, is agentive, and yet the agentive suffix -is is not used, just to attempt an imperfect pararhyme with the final - $-\hat{e}$ of the last word of line 2, Samoêle, and with that, meaning collapses, for the stem -godise is predicative and subjunctive, rather than nominal and agentive.

From the above we find that a Tswana verse is more than just a breath-group of words. This stands to reason
because performers' breaths differ. A Tswana verse is in addition a unit of datum, a sense-unit building on to the complete stanza. It is not necessarily a sentence.

## MODERT TSWAMA POETRY (Contd)

## Binal stage

5.1.1 We pass the stages of recording indigenous compositions, juxtaposing indigenous and modern compositions in school readers, compiling volumes of indigenous and modern compositions, and proceed to the final stage in the development of Tswana poetry, as we see it, namely, the publication of volumes of modern poetry.
5.1.2 We might introduce this stage with the words of certain figures threatening to dominate the scene. Pirst we quote N.H. Kitchin, one of the trio that compiled Boswa jwa Puo (4.10.1 above):
Mo bošeng go lemosega sentle fa re ile ra palama
setlhare kwa godimo ra naya bagodi tlotla go ba
kwalela mebako mme ra lebala go baya motheo o o
nonofileng ka go kwalela bana ba rona ka dilo
tse dipotlana. Go latolesega gore ga re ka ke ra
nna bakwadi ba ba ikanyegang ka ga re a ka ra
ikanyega mo go tse dinnye pele. Re itlhaganetse
jalo ka gobo re fitlhetse go se na sepe se se
kwadilweng, me ka go ngomoga pelo, ra ipona e
bile re ile go khabuela kwa tenteng bobe. Ke
sa ntse ke tla lo atswa ka sengwenyana sekai
mme le lona babadi lo tla bona fa ke le kgakala
thatale go reta setshese.
[Of late it is clear that we climbed the tree from the top. We honoured our elders and wrote their praises, forgetting to lay a solid foundation by writing our children praises on small matters. It is debatable that we can turn out to be faithful writers since we have not been faithful in small things first. We hurried to praise elders only because there was no literature, and because of pity, we plunged very deep. I shall entertain you with a small example from which the readers will realise that I am still far from competent to poetise on a flower.]

And then follows the poem intended for children:

1. Ditšhešenyana dintle,
2. Di kgabisitse naga
3. Ka mebala e mentle,
4. Ke mejo ya dithaga.

-     -         - 

5. Di bitsa dintsinyana
6. Go ya go tsaya matshe,
7. Ee, le matutenyana
8. A go dira dinotshe.

-     -         - 

9. Ditšhešenyana dintle,
10. Di hgatlha le badimo
11. Mme ba opele sentle,
12. Lobopo Iwa Modimo.
13. Ee, le bana ba batho
14. Ba di Šeile maina
15. A supang lorato,
16. Ba di ntshetsa dipina.
[l. Lovely little flowers,
17. adorning the veld
18. in beautiful colours,
19. are the food of weaver-birds.
```
    5. They invite little flies
    6. to fetch sweetness,
    7. yes, little juices too
    8. to make honey.
        honay.
    9. Lovely little flowers,
10. please the gods too
11. and they sing so well,
12. the creations of God.
    - - -
13. Even people's ohildren,
14. have given them names
15. that show love,
16. and composed songs on them]
```

(Wamba p. 13)
5.1.3 The great significance of the above quotation is that $N$.H. Kitchin leads a movement among contemporary bards, a movenent of constructive dissatisfaction, not with somebody else, but with oneself. There is a matured abab rhyme scheme, refuting current belief that Tswana cannot be rhymed. Whereas we noted the failure to rhyme successfully in the works of some authors of the preceding stage, we now enter an era when the bard apparently knows the theory of rhyme and with his first attempt at junior poetry, succeeds with fully-fledged feminine rhyme. This is children's poetry and the spirit remains within reach of children, while making them more observant of, more respectful to natural creation, more reverential to the Creator. The spirit of the third stanza however is somewhat regrettable, savouring of the conflicting religious practices of the twentieth century, when Christian people are known to believe in God and yet to offer sacrifices to the gods
too. Line 9 and its appositional axis, line 12, are elevating:

Ditšhešenyana dintle

-     -         - 

Lobopo Iwa Modimo
[Lovely little flowers

Creations of God]
But that this should please even the gods - le badimo raises pleasing the gods almost to the level of synonymity with pleasing God, and to a discerning spirit this represents bathos : to acknowledge God as Creator and in the same breath place Him in the same bracket as gods. Such errors must be expected. Probably they are rather the products of a confused religious environment than the deliberate makings of the spirit of our author.
5.1.4 We might note the views of another figure, this time one to whom we attributed drama, viz. J. H . Ntsime. In the same issue of Wamba, and on the same page, showing that the Editor of the magazine intended to. give the views of Kitchin and Ntsime on poetry a prominent place, J.M. Ntsime divides his article under four subheadings: Language lives. What is poetry? Tho is the poet? The aim of poetry. He notes that Tswana poetry must change as does that of other living languages and concludes -

Ka moo maboko a gompieno a tshwanetse go
farologana le a segologolo. Fa a sa
farologane puo ya Setswana e tla bo e sa
tshele. (p.14)
[Therefore today's poetry must differ from that of olden times. If it does not differ, then the iswana language is not alive].
5.1.5 Ntsime also sees poetry of olden times as poetry of honour, honour accorded some hero. Themes and motives have since changed and -

```
Gompieno re lemoga fa leboko e Ie itshenolo ya
maikutlo a a tebileng kwa botennye, maikutlo a
a kgoberilweng ke kakanyo e e phunyeletsang
jaaka mmitlwa ya moselesele.
```

[Nowadays we realise that poetry is the selfrealisation of deep feeling stirred by contemplation as penetrating as the thorns of a mosêlessêle tree]

Fe goes on to testify that when you see a flower it reveals its Creator. So does the setting of the sun reveal the Creator of everlasting colourfulness. The poet is someone with certain rare gifts of understanding, gifts of fascinating expression, pure utterance, and penetration of what life really is. Like Shakespeare's saying that, "the lunatic, the lover, and the poet are all of imagination compact", Ntsime attributes so much feeling to the poet, such miracles as the poet's feelings taking shape spontaneously, that it appears as though the poet is presumed not even to think. He must be as good as lunatic. Ntsime says,
... ka mmoki.... e bile a sa nagane.... (p. 16)
[.. since the poet does not even think ..]
words and colour spontaneously combine with his mixed feelings.
5.1.6 Although one is not an artist, one cannot readily accept that art can be produced without some fore- and after-thought. N.H. Kitchin must have given a great deal of thought to the selection of his rhymewords, before or after finalising them. And indeed his rhyme-words, listed according to the numbering of the verses, are an excellent study -

1. . . . dintie [ain:tar ]
2. . . . mentle [men:tqe]
3. . . . naga [na:xa]
4. . . . dithage [ditha:xa]

The rhyme is successful in form, intonation, and duretics. We enter a phase where bards contemplate poetry and engage in criticism themselves.
I.D. Raditladi
5.2.1 Raditladi's volume, Sefalana sa Menate,
(The Granary of Niceties), contains thirty-five modern compositions covering a diversity of themes: patriotism, history, material culture, landscape, love, animal life and natural phenomena.
5.2.2 As we found in the preceding chapter thet conflict was a much used device or subject in indigenous poetry, so do we find it persistently featured in Raditladi's poetry. The World Conflict of 1939-1945
is narreted in nine six-verse stanzas with a fresh aspect of the conflict in each stanza. A thundering arose, a thundering of spears and canon when -
3. Bana ba Yoropa ba ipetsa dihuba,
4. Komanô ya bônê ya utlwala le liwano:
5. Bare, lefatshe lêno opê gaaa le sema,
6. Banna ba Yoropa bôtlhê baa le lema. (p. 31)
[3. Children of Europe drummed their breasts
4. Their quarrel was heard here too:
5. They said, nobody has created this land,
6. All men of Europe must plough it]

Nothing pictures the egotism and self-confidence of the men of Europe better than their drumming their breasts so hard that Africa heard too. No reasoning is more powerful than that nobody has created this land, all must plough it. This message is still beyond the reach, in practice, of many a Christian nation. Lines 5 and 6 have consequently become a popular quotation amone pupils of the subject, Tswana. Raditladi is quotable.
5.2.3 The imagery develops when -
7. Majeremane ba tšwa modutla wa kgetse,
8. Ba itshema maruarua ba kometsa batho,
9. Le Mapolane ba ba meletsa metse .... (p. 32)
[7. The Germans turned into a leaky bag, (never satisfied)
8. Turned into whales and swallowed people,
9. They swallowed the villages of the Poles too ...]

The metaphor of a whale that is a leaky bag is indeed powerful imagery. The Germans were not going to be content with swallowing one nation. Their territorial
greed was insatiable. And with the imagery the conflict intensifies, now no longer generally but specifically against Poland.
5.2.4 And at this stage, with a rainbow-coloured shield, the children of the red soil thundered, and America and Africa heard. And so the conflict spread. Thereupon follows the conflict at Dunkirk as a result of which people lived in tunnels like snakes, while 23. ... nonyane tsa baba di kala marung,
24. Di latina mae a tsônê bogorogorong.
[23. .... birds of the enemy soared in the sky, 24. They shed their eggs in space].

Raditlaoi's patriotism is not to be awaited in vain for as the French slip and fall to the enemy -
26. Rona Mafrika mme ra ema matseba,
27. Kgodumo tsa lesêlêsêlê go lowa. (p. 32)
[26. We Africans then stood alert,
27. Encirclers of the mosêlêsêlê thorn tree, in the fight].

Kgodumo is a legendary animal able to draw you into its jaws as one sucks liquids, and that is what Raditladi makes of his own people in the conflict that continues to intensify.
5.2.5 And in the midst of the conflict there is humour too. There is absolute sincerity in the admission of African ignorance of European warfare, yet implicit willingness to learn. After all, it is already submitted that Africans are Kgodumo only in the thombush country, and now -
31. Ditlhôbôlô ra di rwala mo magetleng,
32. Le bo "Quick marchi ra ba gata re sa ba itse,
33. "Present Arms", tilhôbôlô ra e baa mo diphatleng,
34. "Attention" ra êma sekgomo 'a Ietsêtse; (p. 32)
[31. We bore our guns on the shoulders
32. We took the "Quick march" not knowing it,
33. At "Present armsi placed the guns before foreheads,
34. At "Attention" stood like cows in milk.]
5.2.6 Following upon the fall of Italy, the climax, there
is counter-talking the first time, the anticlimax. The
Germans threaten. Suddenly the Germans shiver -
43. Hitlara re kile ra utlwa a ipólêla,
44. A re ke tladi e kileng ya tshosa ditšhaba,
45. Le basadi ya ba tlholela go lela.
46. Rona ra re phênyô ka mat lhô o tla e leba,
47. Ka diatla yônê gônê gaa na go e tšhwara;
48. Majeremane ba roroma diphara! (p. 33)
[43. We heard Hitlex boast
44. that he is the lightning that frightened nations
45. and forboded mourning for women.
46. We said he would only see victory
47. but never handle it.
48. The Germans' buttocks shivered!]

The African spear combined Mussolini and Japan,
vanquishing them -
51. La etsa dinare la robakanya botho,
52. Hitlara la mo gadika joaka phane, ...
53. Ka jêno ntwa ga eyôs go ituletswe fêla;
54. Bairakgang ga bayô, be iphile lefêla. (p. 33)
[51. The spear broke up people like the buffalo
52. And fried Hitler like a worm.
53. Today war is no more, there is ease;
54. Contestants are no more, they have sacrificed themselves profitlesslyl.

The compound word of the last line, Bairakgang, seems to crown Raditladi's deliberate exploitation of the device of conflict: the end of the conflict is the end of the contestants. By this device our poet is brought, in point of spirit, into comparison with indigenous bards. His imagery is also in the class of the traditional.
5.2.7 Raditladi gives the impression that his World War II was virtuelly the sole responsibility of Africans, and perhaps in his heart of hearts the Tswana. He might have genuinely intended to portray or to make the share of his people prominent: but so, probably, would many a national poet ect.
5.2.8 Like Ntsime and Kitchin, I.D. Raditladi contemplates, and expresses himself on the styles of poetic composition. A case in point is his poem Baboki ba Dikgosi (Raditladi 19-, p. 35)
[Praisers of Kings]
in which the flaws of fellow-bards are chastised in poetry, thus:

1. Babôki ba dikgosi basenyi,
2. Babôki ba rona balotihanyi,
3. Ba šotla ka dikgosi ba tshêga,
4. Ba re kgomo thokwana ea raga
5. Thokwena e ragile le bagami
6. Benyana be tsoga ba bopame. (p. 35)
[1. Praisers of our kings are at fault,
7. Our praisers are sowers of dissension,
8. they mock at kings while they laugh
9. they say the brown cow kicks
10. brown cow kicked even the milkmen
11. so that next day children starved.]

Raditladi comments here on a metaphor that he alleges is applied in indigenous poetry, and therefore himself becomes a critic of poetry, We refer here to the metaphor of the kicking cow, of which metaphor he disapproves. His poem under review is therefore in the nature of a poem upon a poem, in the nature of literary criticism in poetic form.
5.2.9 Fie disapproves of reference to kings as
whales, against which he retorts sharply:
9. Bare, kgosi tsa rona maruarua.
10. Kgosi tsa rona nnae ga di a re rue?
11. A di iretswe go kometsa batho
12. Kana pusô ya kagiso le batho? (p. 36)
[9. They say our kings are whales.
10. Do not our kings rear us?
11. Are they there to swallow people,
12. or for peaceful government and for people?]

He satirically warns the bards to go on laughing while their compatriots watch -
15. Mosong go tla bo go le bosigo
16. Otle tswa setilong seo sa gago ... (p. 36)
[15. In the morrow it will be night for you, 16. You will lose that position of yours ...]

He warns that to be a whale is not to be a king. It does not even frighten the governed. Instead it
hardens their hearts -

Ditshêkô di se fele tsa batho (p. 36)
[Then there is no end to people's litigations]
5.2.10 On the positive side he has something to teach:
31. Babôki a ko ba ithutê go bôka,
32. A mafoko ba a tšwêsê đipaka,
33. Dikgosi ba di tshasê menate, (p. 36)
[31. Bards should please learn to praise,
32. they should dress their words in suits,
33. And paint the kings sweet].

And finally he appeals against the cunning of bards, comparable to that of the "shake":
46. Babôki the a re se intsheng dinôga,
47. A re bokeng kgosi go tšhwanêtse,
48. Ga re ba malôba, re tswêlêtse. (p. 37)
[46. Bards, please, let us not turn into snakes
47. let us praise kings appropriately,
48. We are not as in days of yore, we have progressed.]

His inagery is respectably high, such as dressing praises in suits (dipaka : pakke klere), and covering the kings with praise. At times the chastising is severe, such as against turning themselves into snakes. The allusion here to the wily serpent of Eve's day is apparent, and also points to Raditladi's employment of the device of association of ideas. The allusiveness of his poetry will become more apparent as we proceed. We recall the drama of the snake recorded in 4.10.14 above.
5.2.11 Having examined Raditladi's attitude to kings and their praises, we refer hereunder to two of his own compositions. His praise on Isang a Lentšwe is a case in point. Isang is simply a hard nut to crack for all Botswana. He has taught people to sink boreholes for drinking water and they love him, and consequently chiefs' conferences are held in Isang's capital, Mochudi. He has led in Kgatla education and is worthy of emulation. And -
24. Ke lentšwêtshipi la go nêwa moagi nêô. (p. 4l)
[24. He is the ironstone that is worthy of being presented to a builder]

Isang's exile to Mosomane is regretted by the poet, while reconditely as well as metaphorically couched -
25. Nnaa kgomo ya Bakgatla ba e digetse kae?
26. Selelo sa yônê se utlwala Mošomane;
27. Maši a yônê a tla tlhôka go gamêlwa gae,
28. Go kgorisa basadi le basimane. (p. 41)
[25. Where have they thrown the cow of the Bakgatla?
26. Its lowing is heard from Mosomane.
27. It will be impossible to milk it at home,
28. to fsed women and boys]

He uses the metaphor of a cow for a chief too, but not that of the brown cow that kicks the milkman. His cow's milk is food for boys and women, as though the exile was because of being such a good milker and therefore unjustified. And here the onesidedness of our bard comes out. Although Raditladi refers to fellowbards as sowers of dissension, he himself makes this error when referring to a man who brought an exile upon himself as the big forehead that beat even hot water -
33. Phatlakgolo palêla le mêtse aa fisang. (p. 4l) This can only invite the wrath of opponents or the law.
5.2.12 The poem Isang a Lentswe is a sustained allusion to the praise of Pilane (schapera p. 55) -

Iine 40. Pilane ketlape lantswêpilwane,
41. Ketlapa le lebotšhêlêdi, Pilane,
42. baletshwari botlatloga menwana;
[40. Pilane is a rock of ironstone,
41. he is a slippery rock, Pilane;
42. those who touch it will lose their fingers.]

Isang, being a great-grandson of Pilane, has a hereditary right to the praise. Once more Raditladi distinguishes himself as the poet upon the poetry of yore, saying of Isang:

1. Lentswe legolo le namile Botswana,
2. Bafudi ba lônê ba fêla dinala.
3. Baleki ba lônê ba latlha menwana,
4. Ba robega masufu ba sa ikaêlêla. (p. 40)
[I. Large rock spreading over Botswana,
5. its shooters lose their nails:
6. those who attempt it lose their fingers;
7. their upper arms break without being intended to.]

As already seen earlier, Raditladi exploits the device of conflict fully to plot his poetry, in the same manner as we observed in indigenous poetry. In the process he does not succeed to conceal a challenge to rivals, thus fanning the fire of dissension which he disapproves of. Literature must be true to life. It must be life itself, and it seems that conflicts must be seen for what they are and faithfully reported.
5.2.13 Even in his composition on Kgarna, the Christian, conflict rings right through, and is the golden thread of causality from start to finish. Kgama was born when the Ndebele threatened the Iswana, but grew into a rock, a bigger rock than an outsize pack-ox, and settled at rest in his country. Far broke out. Guns zoomed and horsehoofs clattered, but Kgama did not stir, waiting for those who cared to shoot to do so:
13. Kgosi Kgama ênê a sala fêla a ba êmêtse
14. Gore ba ba lalang ba fula ba fulê.
(Kgosi Kgama, p. 37)
[13. King Kgama remained still, waiting for them, 14. That those who would shoot should shoot]

Humorously the flight of the Ndebele is dramatised as they sensed trouble and said:
16. "A hê jaana Kgosi Kgama ga ka mpone:
17. A ruri Kilanolelô ga ka mpone: (p. 37)
[16. "This way King Kgama will suxely see me:
17. And indeed Kilamolelo* will see me:"]

The exclamation points to fright and resultant flight.
5.2.14 But this was not the end of conflict, for jealous rivals with spiked tongues incensed Kgama's father, Sekgoma, causing a quarrel between him and his son,Kgama. The result was a split between the two. Upon Kgama's death in 1923 ("Naintin twenti terii") it is Raditladi who judges Kgama perfectly innocent, saying -

Ga o na le mmala, ngwana wa ga Sekgome; Sebôla se Ia kae, morêna wa setšhaba? ( $p$. 38)

[^9][You have no stain, son of Sekgoma; Where is the blemish, chief of the nation?]

To him Kgama is a statesmen of Mošwešwe's proportions. They crack rocks when they combine, they guard the fords. The allusion, once more, to the conflict over the ford which was the theme of the praises of Tshaka and Motsile I, already treated, recurs. He says:
47. Kgosi, wena le Mošwêswê le a lekana,
48. Io tlêrêbêtsa mantšwe fa lo kopana,
49. Lo lela lo rakanêla letsibôgô. (p. 38)
[ 47. King, you and Mošwešwe are equal,
48. You crack rocks when you combine,
49. When you weep and join hands for the ford]

This is not all that illustrates Raditladi's persistent association of ideas. Ve refer to the history of Mosweswe. But, like Kitchin in his attributing to the jackal a wish that the heavens were near so that he could report his complaints against man, Raditladi wishes the heavens were near thot he could build Kgama a hut there. We refer to the lines -
50. Iegodimo le koo ruri le le gaufi
51. Ke ka bo ke agela kgosi Kgama ntlwana* (p. 38)
[ Were the heaven near I would build King Kgama a hut .....]
5.2.15 Although Raditladi makes the errors that he criticises, he must be credited with conscious contemplation of poetic themes and styles. This contemplation,

[^10]appears to be a necessary concomitant of the inspiration that possesses a poet and leads to composition. Some forethought or afterthought is at least necessary for a poet. Raditladi comes nearest to the excellence of spirit and imagery of indigenous poetry.
5.2.16 Raditladi gives regularity of form to his poetry. Kgosi Kgama is in nine stanzas of seven lines each, in the rhyme scheme abbcdde. Isang a Ientšwe is in six stanzas of six lines each, in the rhyme scheme ababcc. He rhymes full worảs (kae/kae, mang/ mang), morphemes (Isang/fisang, Mošomane/basimane), and syllables (Bakgatla/batla, mooka/tsêtsêlêka). His rhythm is often so exact as to suggest balancing of parts, e.g.
2. Bafudi ba lônê ba fêla dinala (l2 syllables)
3. Baleki ba lônê be latiha menwana. (12 syllables) (5.2.12 above)

He operates linking with symonyms, thus attaining variation of form while repeating and elaborating an idea, e.g.

Ga o na mrala, ngwena wa ga Sekgoma
Sebôla se fa kae, morêna wa setšhaba? (5.2.14)
Mmala and sebôla are synonyms, and are linking words. The balancing of parts is self-evident in the above lines, e.g.:

Ge o na mrala// newana wa ga Sekgoma, etc.
5.2.17 We have repeatedly referred to Raditladi's loyalty to the indigenous spirit and form while ghowing unmistakable tendencies to European technique, such as rhyme. This does not detract from his originality, which is revealed even when he composes a poem upon a poem. Raditladi is an artist, conscious of a calling to prophesy, to chastise, and yet to maintain an aesthetic level worthy of comparison with what is good in great literatures. While careful to make no extravagant claims for Raditladi, we would be doing our investigation, and the study of Iswana literature, a disservice if we did not place him above his group, namely the composers of original modern verse. It is not weakness on the part of Raditladi, it is in fact a strong point, that he consciously copied from indigenons poetry and from Western European poetry. He is conservative-progressive. And this is the crux of Raditladi's modernity. He reminds one of the Arrikeans poets of the forties, that is, of the fifth decade of this century, of whom is said:

Hierdie digters sluit veral in hul vroegste werk aan by die Dertigers, maar tree weldra (I underline) duideliker op die voorgrond as oorspronklike en afsonderlike persoonlikhede. (Van der Walt p. 74)
5.2.18 Beyond balenced parts the lines below are interesting in the study of their nodes -
/Lêñtsvě / Iěgōlo / Iě na̛mīlě / Bơtswänă/
/Băfūdǐ/bǎ lōnǎ / bă fēlǎ / dinālã/

/Bǎ rơbēgã/ măsūfǔ/bā sǎ/ikǎ̂êlēlã/
(5.2.12 above)

There are four nodes in each line. The short-longshort verse-foot predominates. The nodes are usually complete words or phrases or word-groups as above. An examination of his Pula (Rain, p. 24) also reveals that Raditladi's lines of poetry are usually inclined to be matched in number of nodes. This appears to be a tendency towards exact metre. What remains is to chisel the nodes into proper verse-feet. Comparing the metaphor of Raditladi's Pula with the perspicuity of Mafoyane's Pula (4.8.7), on the one hand, and Leseyane's Pula (4.5.2, indigenous), on the other, quite clearly Reditladi is the one modernist who has learned from indigenous composition. And with this we may now proceed to two other modernists, S.A. Moroke and G.C. Motlhasedi.
S.A. Moroke
5.3.1 S.A. Moroke has two reasons to write poetry. Pirstly, he is a practising minister of religion of the Methodist Church of South Africa, and his literary efforts span a much wider congregation than his church. Secondly, he is conscious of coming from a family of bards, as he states in his preface to Matshotlho, Digests, his volume of moderm poetry. Had he but
collected some of the poetry of his family and learned from it what awaits to be learned! It is not enough that he regrets that his forbears left nothing written. He ought to have investigated further. He lost what Raditladi geined.
5.3.2 Moroke's poetry features a diversity of themes : netural phenomena, religion, animal life, history, the culture of: present generations such as the inauguration of a school; he writes on the abstract values, sach as pleasure, love, nostalgia. But perhaps, in fairness to him, one should place first his conscious urge to prophesy to his readers. And in this connection we refer to his poem -

Barutegi ba Afrika (p. 32)
[The educated Africans]
Irmediately in the steps of the Great Prophet he says:

1. Lo lesedi la lefatshe,
2. Matlhasedi a letsatsi
3. Re inoleng mo lefifing,
4. Lo re iseng kwa leseding!
5. Ee je maungo a thuto
6. Boitumelo le lorato: (p. 32)
[I. You are the light of the earth,
7. rays of the sun,
8. lift us from darkness
9. and take us to the light,
10. that we enjoy the fruits of learning,
11. namely contentment and love]
5.3.3 Enlightened people evidently have a political
duty. And here he drematises -
12. Foko le re: "Iketieng tine.
13. Nako ga e ise e fitlhe,
14. Io seka Iwa ithuse,
15. Io seke 1we ipusa:
16. Pitsa ga di ise di butswe:
17. Ga se kgale 10 tsetswe: " (p. 32)
[7. Word says: "Do be steady.
18. Time has not yet arrived,
19. Do not as yet help yourselves,
20. Do not govern yourselves:
21. The pots are not yet done;
22. It's not long since you were born:']

In this respect lioroke is nationalistic and not individualistic. He is his people's mouthpiece against popular political platitudes that have proved absurd, such as the last line above, which gives the reason for line 10. The metonymy of line 11 raises the standard of his diction, but otherwise the stanza is devoid of imagery, plain and transparent, as well as lacking in aesthetic utterance.
5.3.4 Moroke falls into the error of trying to reason his reader into an attitude or even simply ordering him into it, instead of capturing an experience which can in turn be captured by the reader. He immediately supplies the answer to the persuasion in lines 7 to 12 above, saying:
13. Tsatsi kgale le tlhabile,
14. Me-Afrika lo rutegile:
15. Pitsa kgale di kgakgatha
16. Di goteditswe ka thata. (n. 33)
[13. The sun is long up,
14. Africens you are enlightened:
15. Pots have long been simmering,
16. being thoroughly heated]

There is no difficulty for the reader to experience. It must be deduced that the poet experienced nothing either. He had but a story to tell. The conflict which is the theme of Raditladi's poetry, is conspicuous by its absence or weakness.
5.3.5 In the fifth stanza the enlightened people are required to make bridges for the less fortunate to cross the darik river of Africe, and not to bow before hardships. But no river ever confronted anybody, nor did any difficulty ever arise. In the sixth stanza enlightened people are said to have scaled heights mountains - and to have crossed rivers along the way to progress. These are the metaphors that should have built up the poen to give the narrative some semblance of reality. And, as if the rays of the sun are not stronger than lamps, the further persuasion comes -
35. Banna tsholetsang dipone,
36. Tšhaba di tIe dj di bone: (p. 33)
[35. Men, raise the lamps
36. that the nations see them]
5.3.6 Moroke attempts end-rhyme fairly well, trying the scheme aabbcc in this poem. He also uses morpheme rhyme correctly .-
13. Tsatsi Kgale le tlhabile,
14. Ma-Afrika lo rutegile: (5.3.4 above) Occasionally he rhymes the unaspirated with the aspirated consonant -
25. Lo amogetse dithuto,
26. Agelang batho meratho. (p. 33)
5.3.7 All in all, Noroke must reconsider his thoughtstructure and imagery. He has not created. He has not exercised his reader's mind. He has not entertained. Even where for instance his title is a proverb with poetic features, he errs in the direction of diluting the poetic features and failing to capture universal experience. We refer to -

Moleta-ngwedi o leta lefifi (p. 29)
[Procrastination is the thief of time]
Firstly, the proverb is: moletangwedi ke moletalefifi. This is a poetic version. The fixity of proverbs must be retained as far as possible, especially in poetry. The poet is expected to be more sensitive to form than ordinary people. His expression should reveal this. It is therefore his duty to record the version that excels. Our bard goes on to persuade that this proverb is a word of advice (kgakololo), of truth (boammaarure), spoken by a hero (senatla). The statement is wealth (letlotio). Once nore there is no confrontation. There is no conflict between procrastination and promptitude, no conflict between light and darkness.

The entire 'poem' persuades to a certain attitude. There is no creation. Besides attempting to rhyme, there is no other formal device in the verse-structure. 5.3.8 The poen Moleta-ngwedi o leta lefifi is in nine stanzas of four lines each. Each stanza is a. thought-unit. There is better thought-arrangement in this poern than in Barutegi ba Afrika. The device of linking or its opposite, straddling rhyme, is conspicuous by its total absence. And these are some of the things Moroke lost by neglecting to investigate indigenous poetry and Paditladi gained by keeping it in view while yet emulating European styles.
5.3.9 Moroke's telling makes him forget the form of his verse. He simply writes as he would tell, e.g.: O na a sa thole a bonwa kwa kerelkeng, O na a tlhola a rapame mo diphateng, A gateletswe thata ke bolwetse, Lobaka Iwa malatsi a le mantsi. (Ga a swa Mothupi - p. 31)
[He was no more to be seen at church He lay all day in bed Being very ill For many days]

There are no ellipses. The above reads as two sentences, the first line being one, and the rest the other. The word--order remains as in ordinary speech. There is more spirit at the arrival of Sephaphathi in Sephaphathi o boela gae, p. 30, where the youth is seen as -

Mosimane wa se-ema-ka-maoto
Thakadu ya sefala-ka-dinala
Kgotsa a ke bona moswi-a-rula.
Boy who stands on his legs
Antbear that digs with its claws
Or do I see one risen from the dead?]
The poet now captures a picture. The praise-names are creations. They show some imagery. Otherwise Moroke tells. Moroke pleads. Moroke persuades. There is no experience of the beauty of the river Tite for instance. The poet simply wants to be believed that it is beautiful:

E gone Noka ya Tite,
Noka e ntle ka nnete. (p. 16)
[There is a river Tite,
a beautiful river indeed].
Moroke lacks intensity, fire, penetration. He leaves his reader ice-cold.

## G.O. Mot Masedi

5.4.1 Me have grouped Motlhasedi with Raditladi and Moroke as modern poets, composing their poetry under Western European influences. Fe have noted that within this group Raditladi combines the indigenous Tswana with the Western European tradition, thus towering in originality, in spirit and technique above others of the group. We have observed that Moroke is a rhymist scarcely getting beyond dogeerels. We now find Motlhasedi attempting something different and new, the narrative poem. This is a djfficult genre because of its sustained epic tenor, dramatic pulse, subtle plot and relevant detail.
5.4.2 From another angle, whereas Raditladi's and Moroke's poetry is lyrical, Hothasedi's is objective. The narrative in such poetry is usually easy to grasp, easier than the abstruse metaphor of lyrics.
5.4.3 In view of the foregoing we shall refer only incidentally to the narrative. We shall not set ourselves first and foremost the task of tracing the source or course of the epic, Moepatshipi ga a bone (The iron digger does not see). In any case the author does not lead us into the secret of his sources for the story of King Kobe and his ministers of the christian religion, and hospitals. Hence our task seems to lie in the direction -

```
.... om die boeiendheid van die verhaal juis te gaan soek, afgesien van die epiese feitlikhede, in die wyse warop dié gegewe, poësie geword het, deur die besondere bou en verwoording ven die Verhaal ........ (Van der Valt, preface)
```

Has this datum made poetry or is it a poetic experience? Is this form poetic? Is its diction concentrated, aesthetic, artistic, penetrating, and therefore poetry?
5.4.4 The outstanding feature of this poet's style is his fastidious employment of parallelism -

$$
\text { 1. } \frac{\text { Ke sa gopola sentlenyäna// ka tiragalo ya }}{\text { maloba }(1 \cdot 5)}
$$

[T still remember clearly that incident of yore ]
An attenpt has been made to dress each verse with two axes. To anybody who knows that the Tswana traditional bard rather errs in the direction of too much veriation
of style, it is at once clear that Mothasedi errs at the diametrically opposite end. Occasionally a triaxial
verse occurs, such as line 4, page 5-
Isatsi legolo // Iemogang // e ne e le ja Morena.
[Do understend, the great day was the Lord's day]
One could also quote the 27 th line on page $56-$
Polokakgolo // fa ba bua // ga e thuse e a roba
[Perfect safety, so they say, does not help but injures] which could also be read in four axes -
polokakgolo // fa ba bua //ga e thuse // e a roba and the sixth last line on page 59-

Mra ikana // mogaetsho // le jaana ba sa tshela.
[I can swear, compatriot, even now they still live] What is the purpose of this form : to display form or to convey the spirit of the poem?
5.4.5 To attempt an answer to the above question we look into our poem itself. Chapter 7 (p. 40) opens with a letter from the girl Keneilwe to the young man 0 thusitse, saying, in prose, which we cest hereunder in the author's style of parallelism:

1. Morategi Othusitse //ga ke kwale a mantsi,
2. Ke kopa selo se le sengwe // gore o tie go mpona.
3. A o ka re o nthata // wa ntima le motsotso // motsotsonyana o le mongwe?
4. Mphoentle ge a kitla a go kgoreletsa //o mo file ngwaga otlhe.
5. Le ma mpha Ietsatsi // kgwedi e fela ka Matlhatso.
6. Ke tla bo ke le Gaborone //ke jone borakanelo // me ke bone o goroga.
7. Re ka adima ntlonyana $/ / n t l o$ nngwe ya hotela
8. ka madi a mabotlana // re ka kgona go duela.
9. Isatsi jeo ja Ifatlhatso // o lebelele nna koo,
10. Ke tla itlisa nna ka sebele // fa o sa ka ke wa goroga.
11. Ke fetsa ka a le kalo // ke go atla mo phefong 12. Bakwadi ga ba babedi //ke ma fela // Keneilwe.
[1. Loved one othusitse, I do not write rauch,
12. I ask for one thing : that you come and see me.
13. Can you if you love me, deny me a minute, only one little minute?
14. Mphoentle will never hinder you, you gave her a whole year.
15. Give me also a day, the month ends on Saturday.
16. I shall be at Gaborone, that is the rendezvous, and let me see you arrive.
17. We can borrow a hut, one of the hotel
18. with a small amount, we can manage to pay.
19. That Saturday, you expect me there,
20. I shall come personally, if you don't arrive.
21. That's all there js to say, I kiss you by air.
22. There are no two writers, but I alone, Keneilwe.]
5.4.6 What the writer casts in prose, can be recast unaltered as above, in biaxial and polyaxial lines. Is it probable that what he moulds in biaxial and polyaxial
lines, can es well be cast unaltered in prose. Me try
lines 1 - 7, p. 5, casting in prose:
Ke sa gopola sentienyana ka tirogalo ya maloba.
Re ne re le matshutitshuti, tsadikgolo le
nnakgolo, tshimanyana le tshetsana, ntsho di
gatana melala. Tsatsi legolo, lemogang, e ne e
le ja Morena. Kgosi Kobe jaaka gale, tsatsi jeo je legolo, a dirile ka diatla, a e laditse fa
fatshe, Tshetlhana-phohu e molema, naka 10 thabile mmu.

As we see the position, there is nothing to add or rearrange, to read the lines above in prose. The fact that only the capitals at the beginning of some of the poet's lines need be changed to small letters is fer too little a difference between the verse and prose casts to be of any significance.
5.4.7 Can this be done with Raditladi's poetry for instance. We take lines from Mariga, p. 29 of Sefalana Sa Menate:

1. Phefotsididi e tšwa Borwa,
2. Phefotsididi e tla fisa Masarwa,
3. Etsile go tshuba naga,
4. Sethunya, mmốô le nôga.
[1. The cold wind comes from the South,
5. The cold wind will scorch the Bushmen,
6. It will scorch the veld,
7. The flower, as well as the snake.]

In prose this would be:
Phefotsididi e tswe Borwa. I tsile go fisa Maserwa,
le go tshube nage Ie sethunya, mmogo le noga.
Imnediately the repetition of phefotsididi in line 2 becomes unnecessary in prose. The repetition of the auxiliaries of scorch - e tle fisa (it will scorch : line 2), e tsile go tshuba (it will burn: line 3) - becomes unnecessary too. And as to line 4 it is a verse following and ending on a corresponding rhyme-word. We refer to naga and noga. This last line consists of two wordgroups, both being the object of a predicate in line 3 . Line 4 is not a sentence but a verse, with certain units
of correspondence with line 3. And may we add that the two lines are in perfect symmetry with each other -
Etsilě / gǒ tshūǎ / nägă
sěthūnyǎ/mōgǒ/ Iě nōgǎ

We do not intend any extravagant claims of perfection for Raditladi's poetry at all, but it certainly shows tendencies from which to learn. His verses are not sentences, while Wothasedi's generally are inclined. to be.
5.4.8 We return to lines 1 to 7 of Motlhasedi once more. In our opinion they seem far too wordy, which is the feature that makes them prosaic. If we contend that there is no word-economy, at the same time no aesthetic repetition; that there is no concentrated expression, nothing recondite; that there is too much telling, even a warning to understand, which drowns any capturing of an experience; can we not deduce from these contentions that the poetic experience was not only extremely faint, but an unsuccessful effort is being made to make believe that it is being relived in writing? The opening line betrays this persuasion of the reader to be believed that this was in fact a true experience -

1. Ke sa gopola sentlenyana tiragalo ya maloba (p. 5)
2. [I clearly remember the incident of yore]

Is this clear remembering intended to justify relating an incident of Jong ago, maloba? Does it not turn
out to be an admission that the experience is not fresh, is not recaptured as on the day of occurrence? This is reproduction and not creation. And poetry is opposed to reproduction if creation is possible, even as an authority says -

Die lrunstenaar wil nie reproduseer nie; hy wil skep, en alle kunsskepping impliseer 'n aktiewe werksamheid. (Grovè 1962, p. 1)
and further

> .... sonder die vorm geen inhoud, sonder inhoud geen vorm. (Grove $1962, ~ p .4$ )
5.4.9 The form of this long poem - ten chapters, the chapters not divided into stanzas to point to stages of development in the narrative, most lines being biaxial, even where a single word might have been a more effective alternative verse, e.g.:
tshadikgolo [old women
nnakgolo old men
tshimanyana little boys
tshetsanyana little girls] -
seems exaggerated decoration. And that is what has led to the lack of concentrated utterance, and aesthetic effect.
5.4.10 Being very conscious that he is relating an incident of yore, maloba, the poet's active participation, and therefore his word's impact, remains low. His attributing proverbs to the Tswana, instead of directly applying them whenever applicable, confirms further that the narrative inclines to hearsay, to prose, and a
poetic experience is not captured. We instance in this regard, firstly, lines 24 and 25 -

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 24. Ka dipuo tsa bagolo ditswerere mo pineng, } \\
& \text { 25. Ga di rate go rakana, go ka nkga go sa bola } \\
& \text { [24. According to adult sayings, adept singers } \\
& \text { in open competition } \\
& \text { 25. never want to meet, it will smell although } \\
& \text { nothing is rotten ] }
\end{aligned}
$$

What if the smell without any rot had been pictured, as well as hot rivalry in actual open competition?

The experience is taken out of our poem. Ve are left with the story, not the poetry. Secondly, we instance line 4 of chapter 10 , page 55 :

## Batswana ba na le seane, tsie e fofaka moswang.

[The Tswana have a proverb: the best work is done on a full stomach ]

The poet loses impact for he is not himself saying so. Fie is relating that others say so. There is a sharper sting when Keneilwe arrives home from Durban (Thekwini), and her nother rushes to greet her while her father hesitates, and the poet captures the experience proverbially saying:

Mmangwana o tshwara thipa, o e tshwara ka bogale,

> Le noga o a e tshwara

```
(p. 58, lines 23, 24)
```

[A mother grabs the knife, grabs it by the blade Even a snake she grabs .......]

There is even more didactic effect when the poet's originality is shown by his capturing universal truth
aptly, saying for instance -
Kana lorato ke molemo, Io alafa baratani (p. 59)
[Tove is medicine, it cures lovers]
5.4.11 A poet must show originality as when our poet here, refers to chilaren as bo-ntshe-letsele-re-anye -[give-me-the-breast-to-feed]; and when he describes an elegant and diligent girl as -

[Twig that dies standing, cook-of-a-pot-that-does-get-done,
Cook-of-it-who-does-not-eat-it ......]
This is a tall girl who will remain sleek and elegant to death, who will not bow to anything lesser in her lifetime. When she tackles a task she sees it finished. She does not work for her own selfish ends. The imagery is rousing here, and it is the direct analysis of the bard. The creation of metonymicel expression counts in the bard's fevour. We have in mind -

```
line 13 dipitsana di ne di tšhatšhama ....
    [the pots were frying]
```

line 16 .... dipitsana di sa butswa
the pots were still cooking ]
However, an important matter of poor tone arises here, that is, as to the poet's attitude to his audience. He seems to calculate that his reeder will not understend his metonymy and goes to explain it, saying (p. 5):
line $17 \frac{\text { Ija, pitsana ga di butswe, ke raya go }}{\text { butswa dinama }}$
[On! pots don't cook, I mean the meat cooks].

This adds to the wordiness of the poem.
5.4.12 There is plenty of play with sounds and words, such as we find on page 40 -

Ga tsoga matsuetsue, matsubutsubu a tsubutla, Makubukubu a kubuga .......
[Whirlwinds arose, storms upon storms raged, Waves upon waves swelled .............] ]

We quoted a letter written by Keneilwe to Othusitse in 5.4.5 above. And now, what captures better the storms of conflicting loyalties to two girls, Mphoentle and Keneilwe, in the heart of Othusitse, than the rising whirlwinds, raging storms and swelling tides in the lover's heart?
5.4.13 The device of linking is richly distributed, e.g.

Pphoentle sesetlhana, ngwana o tlhapa ka lobese;
Ngwana o tlhapiswa ke phero ..... (p. 13)
[Mphoentle is light-complexioned, the child washes with milk;
The child is lightened by air ....]
linking is thus not merely a repetition of a segment, but the segment may undergo mutation to develop the idea as above. We refer to tlhapa linking with tlhepiswa. We find this also when a pun is effected where -

```
in line 13 ...... dikhurumelo di tshutshuma,
    ...... morakeng Tshutshumane (p. 5)
```

The name of the cattlepost is derived from the verb-stem-tshutshuma (to seethe with oil), viz. Tshutshumane, an original creation.
5.4.14 Rhyming is subtly operated e.g.

Fa o bona, morwarra, dilo dingwe di a lojwa.
Ga di buiwe felafela, di ntshiwa go le thata. Gapegepe, morvarra, fa o lebile mariga,
A latela letlhafula, ga go direge felafela Ga go direge bontshong, go na le mongwe molao
(p. 22)
[As you see, brother, some things are concealed. They are not just told, they are said when things are hard.
Again, brother, as you see winter, it follows autumn, this doesn't just happen it does not simply happen, there is some law.]

The repetition of morwarra, felafela, is intentional. The repetition of the class-prefix and concord di- in the first two lines, is intended to stress the significance of this sound which is indicative of multiplicity. It conveys meaning. Such repetitions rise to heights of excellence when linking is intended to effect a chiasmus at the same time -
.... 10 itebe 10 ipone
lo ipone lo itebe ..... (p. 6, lines 1, 2).
5.4.15 All told, the fescination ('boeiendheid') of the narrative poem is lost in the mist of its wordiness, and in the tendency to relate the story instead of trying to capture the experience. This datum ('dié gegewe')
would have been good poetry, were the form in which it is cast varied according to the varied emotions, according to development of thought, and were the wording more concentrated and therefore more effective. Modernists must indeed not make the mistakes which indigenous compositions avoid. Pinally, this poet is placed with modermists since he attempts a Western European genre, the epic narrative.

Church hyrms
5.5.1 And on this latter note, let us trensfer our attention to modern church hymns. most of which are translations from and adaptations to Festern European scale and harmony. The church as such is concerned with evangelisation and the hymns are in execution of divine injunction as found in Ephesians 5:18-30. It would seer impertinent to pretend that one can add any more to what is said of the spirit or intention of any acknowledged sacred hymn. And if spirit is such an important ingredient of poetry as we have found all the way to here, there should be every reason to include hymns in poetry.
5.5.2 Various religious denominations operate among the Tswana, e.g. the Nederduitse Gereformeerde Kerk in Afrika, the Wesleyan Nethodist Church and the Iutheran Church. There are certainly meny others.
5.5.3 The N.G. Kerk published its first volume of Tswana hymns, compiled by Rev. Emil Beyer of Mochudi, Botswana, and Rev. Henri Gonin of Moruleng, Transvaal, in 1889, and had it revised, enlerged and published again in 1907 under the titie "Lifela tsa Sione tsa Tirelo ea Modimo mo Kereken le mo Selrolen". A further revision published in 1946 followed. Recently the Church in the different language groups combined efforts and produced a large volume containing 450 tunes sung in Southern Sotho, Northern Sotho, Iswana, Zulu and Xhosa, and different language-groups can recite psalms and hymns and spiritual songs simultaneousiy in five known indigenous tongues of South Africa, singing and making melody to the Lord. As a Bantu, I do acknowledge this contribution of $450 \times 5$, that is, 2250 poems in five volumes, to the Bantul languages of South Africa. And may we classify then emongst didactic poetry - also bearing in mind Rev. A. Sandilands' definition of a hym (1.9.3) - as poems of prophecy? The spirit, the motive, namely to pray, to worship, and even as $\ldots$ they that went before, and they that followed, cried, saying, Hosanna ....
(St. Mark II: 9)-
to lead, and to follow, in song, and incidentally in poetry, is always evident.
5.5.4 Both the Hosanna and Dihèla tsa Tihèló Modimo feature an ode to Judgment day -

1. Tsatsi la dikgakgamatso
2. Isatsi le le boitshegang
3. Patshe lotihe le tla tsoga
4. Ka le utlwa yo o tlang
5. Go sekisa fo sekisa,
6. baswi le ba ba trhelang
(Hosanna 91(2))
(Dikela 377)
[1. Day of wonders,
7. Frightful day,
8. The whole world will awaken
9. Hearing one coming
10. to call to account, to call to account,
11. the dead as well as the living]

The ode has five stanzas, although the Hosanna has only
one, the other four being found in the 1946 Tswana version. A popular rhyme-morpheme in the hymns is the nasal velar [y] seen here in lines 2, 4, 6. Also featured here is the pararhyme dilfgakgamatso/tsoga where the unvoiced alveolar affricate ts occurs in lines 1 and 3. Furthermore, line 5 is in the form of a refrain. Quite typically, sincerity is placed above accuracy in rhyming, spontaneity comes before scholarship in these poems. It is also possible to view lines 1 and 2, lines 3 and 4, as biaxial, line 5 also as biaxial, and to divide the contrasts in line 6 -baswi : the dead; le ba ba tsheleng: and the living - into two axes. According to Dinela tsa Tinelo ea Modimo this hym is the equivalent of hym No. 607 from the Congregational Hymal. No doubt the entire hym in its five stanzas is a poem of prophecy.
5.5.5 Odes are very popular, e.g. the ode to Iove, No. 198 in Hosanna, and the ode to the Bible in Sione yo o opêlang (No. 241). The ode to Love - Lerato le Ie gaisang (Hosanna 198): Transcendent Love - is in the rhyme scheme abab, provided we concede again, as to stanzas 2 and 3 , that slight deviations are permissible in the name of faithfulness to fact, that is sincerity. A stanza from the Ode to the Bible may be of interest.

1. Beibêl, kwalô lwa Modimo
2. ke lo re lo kwaletsweng
3. ke Modimo wa godimo
4. moya o' itshepileng.
5. Khumo yotine e go Iôna,
6. kitso yotlhe e mo teng
7. go re etleeletsa jôna
8. phelo jo bo sa khutleng
[1. The Bible, God's book,
9. it is written for us
10. by cod on high
11. the Holy Spirit.
12. All wealth is in it,
13. all knowledge is therein,
14. to prepare us for it
15. for everlasting life]

Tn our judament lines 1 and 2, 3 and 4 , and 5 and 6 are rhythraically related, which can be expected since this is music. Purthermore we have a perfect rhyme-scheme in this stanza. Again the popular rhyme-morpheme, $-n g$, is richly featured, but this time the entire formation is a perfect ababcbcb, the $b$ representing the -ng sound. It is the most prominent. There we have a perfect rhythm-
pattern and rhyme-scheme, we may clain perfect symmetry of form. And this js the contribution of the church, that bards can fruitfully emulate. We doubt strongly that it is correct to contend that Iswana structure is not amenable to rhyming. Te have seen it in indigenous works, in modern works, and now it attains its highest aspect.
5.5.6 Buka ya Merapêlô features a verse-essay in Mo. 38, and this genre is also quite popular. The story of the Wise men of the East is told in verse, two stanzas, and the wise men are praised as heroes -

1. Lepang ba botlhabatsatsi
2. Ba' latetseng naledi;
3. E' ba lereng go rapêla
4. Morêna wa barêna;
5. Ba mo ntshetsa dikabêlô,
6. Le fa $\in$ sa le newana;
7. Ke dinatla tsa tumêlô
8. Ba mmatla ka tihoafalô.
[1. Watch out for the Dastern men,
9. Those following the star
10. Which brings them to worship
11. the King of Kings:
12. They brine him ofteringe,
13. although He is only a child;
14. They are heroes of faith
15. they seek him earnestly.]
5.5.7 The pairs of verses $1-2,3-4,5-6,7-8$, are in perfect rhythmic equality. The pararhymes of lines 1-2, 3-4 are enough units of correspondence, and so are the morpheme-rhymes of lines 5, 7, 8, to lead us to find that these lines are fairly well attempted verses, duly
demarcated by rhyme-worajs, and knit into a stanza by thematic arrangement and thought-development. The theme is the Eastem men right through. The second pair of lines tells us which star they followed; the third pair tells us why they followed the star; and the fourth pair concludes that therefore they are heroes of faith.
5.5.8 We close this aspect with a brief reference to the Bible text as such as inspiration of composition. We have in mind a number that is an improvement on current Bible translation and therefore an important literary contribution, and this is number 288 in Hosanna and No. 7 in Dihela tsa tihèlō ea Modimo. Psalm $46: 10$ says in Tswana:

Nnañ hela, me lo itse ha ke le Modimo (Bibela) [Just stay, and know that I an God]

It is always doubtful that the God who orders people to live by the sweat of their brow can be expected to countenance their just staying. The Moffat translation says Lesang - 'let alone'. The English Bible on the other hand says, "Be still ....", which is different from letting alone, ignoring. Our hymn is certainly more in line with the spirit of diligence in the Bible as a whole, saying -
I. Didimalang le itse
2. Ke Modimo mo fatsheng:
3. Didimalang le reetseng
4. Foko Ie le kwadilweng

Prose says lesang (let alone), poetry says didimalang (be still). There must be a reason why poetry differed from the prose source. Poetry must be more precise. According to Dihela tsa Tihelo ea Modimo this stanza is perfectly rhymed abab, the last word in the third line being retse and not reetseng. Perhaps the compilers of the Hosanna, as also the reviewers of the 1946 Kopêlô, slipped up here and created a rinyme scheme in this stanza which is not a credit to the entire rhyme scheme. The intention and spirit however remain unimpaired.
5.5.9 Obviously the allusiveness of our hymns would constitute quite a study itself in order to fathom the meaning of the poetry. The words may therefore seem simple, but on closer examination constitute a part of a greater literature which has its reconditeness and depth, an important feature of poetry. The hyms are simple yet sublime.

## Drana

5.6.1 To test whether there is poetry in Tswana dramas, we examine aspects of the works of I.D. Raditladi and J.F. Ntsime. These two dramatists stand out: Raditladi as a pioneer and persistent practitioner in this field; and Ntsime once more, as an investigator of a genre before practising it. Ntsine's preface to Pelo e ja serati, on the nature of drama, is concrete evidence. To date Raditladi has three original dramas
and a translation to his credit, while Ntsime has two compositions.
5.6.2 Raditladi's (1954, p. I) Motswasele II opens with a meeting of tired men, speaking in prose, but when Moruakgomo reminds Molotlhanyi that he found him talking of something, the latter sparkles with indignation and replies thus -

```
Ke ne ke re Iegwale jaanong o mo phupung,
Iegwalê o mo lebitleng gaa na go boa,
    Jaaka letsotsi gaa na go tlhaba gapê;
    ótla busa le ba ba mo mmung;
    Gape batho ga ba na go tlhola ba bua
    Ba re legwalê ke kgosi ya bônê.
[I was saying Legwale is in the grave
    Iegwale is now in the tomb, he cannot return,
    Jike the day he cannot break again;
    He will rule with those in the ground:
    Further, people will no longer speak
    Saying Legwale is a chief of theirs.
```

The last words of the lines above carry the ultimate intention of these lines, with the result that the penults are pronouncedly long and emphatic, making it essential that the end of the word be followed by a distinct pause. These last words have a demarcating effect, making each line a distinct unit. These last words are rhyme-words too, the rhyme-scheme being abcabc, a further unit of correspondence between the lines that makes them verses. Each line refers to Legwale, which common theme knits them into a stanza.
5.6.3 The verses are linked together by a subtle linking : in the first line Legwale o mo phupung is linked with Legwale o mo lebitleng of the second line, using the synonyms phupung and lebitleng; the idea that he will not return, in the second line - gaa na go boa - is elevated in imagery in the following line by means of the inage of a day which breaks once and is never to return ggain; this is amplificd in the next line with further imagery - he will reign with those in the ground, the people will forget him and never call him their chief again. None of these lines can be left out. They represent an excellent thoughtarrangement and -development. The imagery is pungent and a single unity. In ordinary speech this one sentence would suffice: 'Legwalê is dead'. Indeed this is a compact stanza. Much like the Western European stanza, it is an organisation of rhythm and rhyme throughout. It is a lmitting together of the data of a single idea : it is a corporate thought. It is a creation. It is poetry.
5.6.4 One immediately brings into comparison an excerpt from Ntsime (1965, p. 3)

Batshipile: Se ntikolose jaaka pholo ya tona molekane, Se njese mmamadikwadikwane selo sa bana, Boboko jwa me bo ja moretelediane Bo tšelemela fa codimo ga puo ya gago Bo tlhoka maitsetsepelo a Kutlwisiso Go bona maikaelelo a gago.

Don't wheel me round and round like a pack-ox, mate Don't play rings, children's game, with me, My brain is playing the top
It glides over your remarks
It lacks foothold for understanding
To fathom your intention].
Surely Ntsime employs the negative formative, se, at the beginning of the first two lines for purposes of initial rhyming, which form best FUSES with outright objection; and with the same lines end-rhyming with -ane/ -ana, the lines are duly demarcated at either end, as verses. With the units of correspondence mentioned, we have two clear-cut data in verse. Then follows a play with the segment bo at the beginning of the next three lines, first as class-prefix, then as subject concord. There is conscious initial rhyming of these lines, yet each develops the theme, is a further datum leading to the conclusion - failure to understand the speaker's intention. The imagery is lofty. One could not normally say so much instead of simply, 'I beg your pardon', unless one wanted to poetise. This long idiom is a Ntsimeism. It is no reproduction, but a creation. This is imagery of a high order.

```
5.6.5 Witness a further excerpt of Raditladi's
(p. 5) -
```

Sejo: 1. Puo ya me e kgaogane le eo kgakala,
2. Kgakala, kala, jaaka kala tsa mokala.
3. Erile ke re tsaa tsia, ke a rapêla,
4. Ya bo e se: A batho ba bolawê, Mokwena.
5. Batho ga se diphôlôgôlô, Morêna.
6. Moja-rnotho ga se motho, sebatana.
7. Nama ya motho e botihoko ke a dumêla
8. Mogang o šwang 0 bona a belabala,
9. O bône a fala legodimo ka dinala.
10. Batho ditau ba gana go êtwa pele,
11. O bône, hêê, ba menamena matšwele,
12. Ntwa ya bônê e ajwa Setebele.

There is in fact no nee? to select excerpts. This
drama is in poetry throughout. The conflict in indigenous poetry, which Raditladi employs to sustain
the spirit of his modern poetry too, winds up the spirit of rebellion and leads to tragedy. Translation -
[Sejô: 1. Ny remarks are far removed from those, 2. Far, partner, as far as branches of a camel thorn tree.
3. When I said take care "please",
4. Many said's Have the people killed, Mokwena.
5. People are not animals, Chief,
6. A man-eater is no person but a beast of prey.
7. Human flesh is very bitter, I believe,
8. The day he (the murderer) dies he babbles
9. He scratches the heavens with his nails.
10. People are lions, they refuse to be obstructed,
11. If you try they get ready their fists,
12. Their fight is organised the Ndebele way.]

The rhyme-scheme, aaabbbaaaccc, speaks for itself. But surely the alliteration with the velar explosive consonant, k , in the second line, is meant to display art, is a creation of a poet, and is intended to attain aesthetic effect, and it does. Raditiadi is an unqualificd success in rhyming. The idea expressed in the seventh line is a rather penetrating warning. The word 'botlhoko' is a pun, conveying as it does the
bitterness of taste and the bitterness felt when at death one is confronted by the sin of murdering another and starts babbling and kicking and scratching as if tasting and feeling a bitter and painful ordeal. All this is wrapped up in the word botlhoko.
5.6.6 We have no intention of evaluating Raditladi's and Itsime's dramas as dramas, but just to support the submission that they are written in poetry or largely so - in verse and stanza. If we quote more excerpts we shall come to the same conclusion. We mention only that both seem to have been influenced in their themes and forms by European literature. Raditladi's tragedies ever remind one of Shakespeare's. He employs end-rhyme successfully, and there is therefore no doubt that his is modern poetry, even in his drama.
5.6.7 One more word about Ntsime is justified, as to his second drama Kobo e ntsho - 'The black blanket' - a title as elusive as it is allusive. The 'black blanket' is a Shakespearian metaphor referring to the dark night. This allusion to the 'black blanket' first occurs in Ntsime's Pelo e ja serati, page 5, where in a mental conflict with the primitive laws of his parents, lasting through the day, Dithole gets ecstetic at sunset, saying to Batšhipile, referring to the setting sun -
p. 5 Iine 5:
5. Le wela ka leokoriba la bophirima ka bohutsena,
6. Lefifi la bohutsana le tlhaga le suma ka mabetwaepelo,
7. Le apesa lefatshe la bohutsana kobo e ntsho,
8. Le hupetsa naikutlo a me, le ntshofatsa pelo ya me.
9. Ke tla dirang molekane?
[5. It goes dow the western precipice in a sad state,
6. Sad darkness comes hissing angrily,
7. It covers the whole sad earth with a black blanket
8. It stifles my feclings, it saddens my heart,
9. What shell I do, mate?]
(Witness again the play with the form, Ie, initially, in lines 5-8). What really stifles Dithole's feelings and saddens his heart is the conflict of loyalties to his parents' heathen laws on the one hand, as he thinks, and his modern outlook on the other. In the drama Kobo entsho this idea gets elaborated. The chief characters are the first Christians of Mabeleapodj, just emerging from the 'black blanket' of heathendom, witchdoctors and superstitious villagers. Wherees Ntsime renders the Shakespearian idea in original idiom, to the extent that $f$ ew will realise that the metaphor is borrowed, in his translation of Shakespeare's Hacbeth, Raditladi employs the rather literal translation, kobong ya lefifi (Raditladi 1968, p. 11, line 2 from bottom) - ithrough the blanket of the dark" (Shakespeare, Act I, Sc. V, line 54).

IVtsime's idiom stands to live longer. Raditladi's rether unfree rendering is yet a very faithful transletion. The poetic description of the setting sun needs no belcbouring. The allusiveness of Itsime's literature is of great significance in the search for the influence of current upon emerging Iswana literature inasmuch as his works illuninate one another. But his allusiveness is more striking still in the search for the influences of Western European literature on Tswana literature.

Resumé
5.7.0 The foregoing evidence points to fair attempts at poetry in Tswana, aftex what we have called the modern style. The influence of Western European styles at times blankets the indigenous techniques, but the best of the game is when these two traditions are fused in fair ratio which is done best by I.D. Raditladi in both poetry and drama. The development of poetry from the mexe recording of indigenous compositions, has been phenomenal, not so much in the quantitative though, as the qualitative sense. The Iswana language is amenable to the techniques of end-rhyming and initial rhyming, as well as internal rhyming. Tswana, like all languages, has its mere rhymists, but its budding poets too. The nodes of Tswana poetry, traditional and modern, are the embryo of its metre, based on a long syllable surrounded by short ones.

## CHAPRER 6

## CoICLUSION:

Mabôkô
6.1.1 We refer to parr. 1.10.1-2 where we stated What the purpose of this investigation is. The Tswana have mabolo (lit. praises) handed dow from generation to generation and composed in a distinct indigenous style. The Tswana's own opinion, as we learned from D.II. Ramoshoana and P.P. Ieseyane is that mabokô are poetry in the Western European sense.
6.1.2 Our findings are that mabôkô convey the spirit and attitudes of the Iswana as a people, in powerful imagery, in artistic, precise and enthusiastic expression. It is in accordance with human nature that a people should have its own spirit and attitudes in life, and be enthusiastic about them. The expression of such spirit and attitudes in metaphor, and in concentrated forms of diction is viewed as creation. We consider therefore that the mabôko are poetry. In the main the spicit and attitudes of the Tswana are exemplified in 3.2.1 to 3.8.15. The most important and constructive aspect of this spirit is where it conveys What the Tswana think of theraselves or their heroes. Snall wonder that socalled wars on nerves are aimed at destroying a people's self-esteem. Anybody who promotes the self-esteem of a people is its friend.

Anybody who browbeats it perforas an act of undoing it. and foremost in promoting this self-esteem in respect of the Tswana is their poet.
6.1.3 The tremes of Tswana poetry present a chequered picture. Their intention is not only historical recond but the apprehemsion of the human spirit in its response to experience of life as a whole, be this experience sensory, intellectual or spiritual. Hence the attitude expressed in the poetry is not just one of approval, but of appraisal; it is not just one of appreciation but of deprecation too. We therefore subscribe readily to the view that Tswana indigenous poetry is not simply 'praises' but poetry. The divi-ning Dones are not praised, but the lewa or 'lie' of the bones interpreted in highly figurative and recondite style. The work party is not praised all the way, but urged to higher productivity, which is an expression or an economic attitude. The initiates are not always praised : often an earnest plea is made for service to them and the plea nay be an accomplished satire as exemplified in 3.9.10. Wen there is praise, it may be mixed with criticism as lfontshiwa was praised as excellent at war (3.6.1) and criticised as sejankabo, literally eater of regret (3.6.3 line 5 ).
5.1.4 There is a great store of indigenous oral poetry. It requires a team or teams of recorders in order to collect it in all or most of its versions, to hear it recited in as many styles as possible, to cover
all possible interpretations of the abstruse vocabulary and historical allusions. Even when this has been done, recorders will find themselves bound to "read fully", read over and over again, in order to gain a reasonabie measure of understanding. It is in this way, we think, that the various genres sampled in this work can be fully assembled and annotated.
6.1.5 Tswana indigenous poctry has peculiar forms. There is always an idea the bard wishes to state, but he reaches it by first supplying data that lead to it. We refer to these datum-units as verses and reflect them in writing as lines of poetry. Verses are divisible into nodes and the nodes are viewed as possible netrical word-groups. The verses have an interrelation which may be formal. The interrelationship may also lie in the development of ideas leading up to the desired conclusion. This makes certain datum-units or verses into a single thought-unit which we view as a stanza. Similarly stanzas belong together as parts of one greater subject and constitute the poen, and a number of interrelated poens may constitute a cycle. We conclude that a study of this poetry should involve an analysis of verse-nodes, verses, stanzas, poens, and where applicable cycles.
6.1. 6 It must be remembered that this poetry is still largely unwritten. Its forms have to be heard. The foms referred to in the preceding paragraph do not
always readily meet the ear. We should actually speak in terms of tendencies to such forms. But these tendencies are clear and virile.
6.1.7 There are tendencies to metre, which are not readily noticeable in fast declamation. The metre is to be soucht in the retrical word-groups or nodes referred to above. Such a node normally has a long penultinate syllable surrounded by short ones. Based on this arrangeraent of one long, and short syllables, the nodes reveal patterns comparable to English versefeet, thus:


The first-named foot is the comonest and may be varied by the addition of an extra short syllable making it:
which we have referred to as hyperamphibrach. Te come to the conclusion that while Tswana indigenous poetry does not show a clear-cut system, it has enough prosody, or tendency to prosody, which can be developed into a system.
6.1.8 We also found the much-denied end-rhyme featured. Admittedly it is rare, and there are no rhyme-schenes to mention. The end-rhyme takes the form
of end-mospheme-rhyme, sometimes end-syliable rhyme. There is also a variation of end-rhyme where one rhymeword is featured internally at the end of the first half of a verse in parallelism. Therefore there is internal morpheme-riyme. Norpheme-rhyme is inclined to be disyllabic, that is feminine, while end-syllable rhyme is inclined to be monosyllabic, that is masculine. There is a great deal of para-rhyming. Rhyme does not operate to the prejudice of meaning. Therepore poetic licence operates in the direction of rhyming fomal unlikes as long as they rhyme in zeaning,

$$
\text { c.g. uba } \frac{\text { tsena }}{\text { duna }}
$$

6.1.9 We also found the inversion of initial linking which we called straddling rinyme. In the lines below the words mosimane exemplify initial linkine, while the words mona show stradding rhyme:

Monila 0 se nang molato mosimane


The features of a chiasmus then, are a combination of initial linking and straddling rhyme.

Tswana indiéenous poetry has a variety of repetitions, like any other poetry, and we found one of these repetitions to be rhyme.
6.1.10 History is not the object of what we called poems of a historical nature. The historical element consists in the milieu against the background of which ow in view of which or because of which a certain passion to praise or to blane, to suggest to or to assess a given character or phenomenon or incident arises. It is to the credit of Tswana bards, it is a sign of their genius, that they only allude to history, since their object is to create poetry and not to relate history, much as the latter is relevant since it is the milieu. We submit that it is one of the excellences of Tswana indigenous poetry, that it was not conceived, not composed in vacuo.
6.1.11 In view of the lack of rhyme and metre systens, in view of people being used to highly developed systems in these forms elsewhere, Tswana poetry is the more conspicuous by the irregularity of its forms. Often the lines of a stanza differ in nuraber of nodes; some may be uniaxial, others biaxial or even polyaxial; some axes may be riymed internally, others finally, others initially, others not at all. Some stanzas may be short, others lons, and so forth. Sjome nodes may show distinct metrical tendency, others none. The Tswena bard appears inclined to draw as many forms and styles of expression as possible into his every effort. Even in its internal content this poetry varies from one metaphor to the neart, from verse to verse. This
shows how heavily charged with thought the poetry can be, since each metaphor could, with effort, be developed into a stanza. There is great growth and development potentiality. Because of his great resourcefulness, the Tswana bard's poetry shows an exceedingly irregular style. One would say there is no style. The style consists in a lack of style. The irregularity of form is in fact the regular feature. It may often happen that nodern writers lose style completely, thinking there is none in Tswana poetry, or become doctrinaire and monotonous in an endeavour to force it. It will take a great deal of analysis to apply the many styles of form and imagery found in Tswana indigenous poetry with discretion, avoiding dogmatism and monotony on the one hand, and excessive variation and therefore shallow analysis on the other.

## Liodern Tswana Poetry

6.2.1 Just as indigenous poetry is not all oxal, some being published, so modern poetry is not all published, some being oral. We found that some poetry of the early recorders and much poetry of contemporary poets show influences of Western European styles. We would call P. Leseyane's Boamarure (4.6.8-12) modern, but his Pula (4.5.1) indigenous. Tswana poetry influenced by Western European styles, that is modern Tswana poetry, abounds. We would say that, broady speaking, all Tswana poetry is in two families or genres, indigenous and modern.
6.2.2 The development to this modern stage, as we see it, was in four phases: firstly, the recording of indicenous poetry by such forerunners in authorship as Iicha Kgasi and P.P. Leseyane; secondly, the publication of indigenous and nodern compositions alongside of each other. These two stages dovetail. They consist of pioneer rowk. Or, shall we say the poetry of these two stages is a by-product in the industry of producing prose readers for primary schools? Be it as it may, the publications led to the publication of volunes of indigenous poetry along with modern compositions. In this phase the trio Lekgetho, Kitchin and Kitchin excelled by learning from indigenous poetry the indigenous styles of form and inagery. They have imaginative metaphor and 'praise-words', which 'praise-words' could even at times be called 'hate-words'. In the process they also leaned to the Western European forms of endrhyme in particular. They gave no particular attention to metre, and the nodes of their verses are not always equal to those of indigenous verse in metrical propensity. However they lead in a tendency to combine indigenous with modern styles, with the result that Neo Kitchin's 'General Smuts' (p. 93) reads like lebokô while boasting an end-rhyme scheme; Noabi Kitchin's Dikgakologo (Spring - p. 76) is also rhymed but reatures one metaphor aftex the other, the word dikgakologo appearing once only, and in the very last verse. We observed earlier that indigenous poetry works so much in metaphor that a whole poen may never refer to its subject by nañe.
6.2.3 A knowledge of the oral lore, idioms, proverbs, riddles, helps modern composition. Modernists who combine this knowledge with a relatively full understanding of indigenous techniques, such as I.D. Raditladi, produce the best of modern poetry. An example of a forced style, which leads to monotony, is G.C. Motlhasedi's, whose long epic narrative is difficult to classify. A whole book employing the one technique of parallelism in all or most verses is extremely monotonous. In any case if it has no irregularity it is at variance with indigenous Tswana; if it is monotonous it has gone to the opposite extreme, opposite to over-irregular. An authority says -

The balanced sentence, i.e. one in which phrases or clauses which are similar in thought are fade similar in form, is pleasing to the ear because of its rhythm, but tends to produce monotony, if used too freely. (Jackson p. 318).
6.2.4 Modern poetry in Tswana is in stanzas and verses, and is largely rhymed. Some poets succeed with end-morphene-rhyme and attempt a rhyme scheme. There is much pararhyming. This poetry in general lacks the imagery of indigenous poetry, except in a few cases, such as the poetry and drama of I.D. Raditladi. The extent to which Raditladi has steeped hinself previously in indigenous poetry, accounting for the transcendence of his poetry in spirit and form, is seen in his compositions based on indicenous numbers, such as his Isang a Ientswe, which alludes to I. Bchapera's Pilane (5.2.12).
6.2.5 An important genre of modern poetry is church hyms, which we regard as poems of prophecy. They are not only a study in faithful yet free translation, but they reach a high level of symmetry. The spirit of prophecy, the allusiveness of this genre, make it a great part of the great literature of the Christian religion, in Tswana.

## Growth and future Trends

6.3.1 Tswana poetry has frown from oral to written litexature and that in a compartively short time since the first I swana school was established in 1825. (Moloto parr. 1.5.1-7). What has been written down of the oral poetry is a very small fraction of what we estimate can still be collected. There are oral volumes in the field.
6.3.2 Tswana poetry continues to play an important rôle in social entertainment. Its allusiveness to history continues to appeal to audiences. As a result it is recited at githerings, and where the traditional is not available much that is new is composed often on the spur of the moment. Many contemporary bards will be having quantities of their own compositions at their homes composed for specific occasions. This tendency is being encouraged by occasional literary competitions which have at times resulted in publications such as Raditladi's Sefalana sá ienate.
6.3.3 The tendency to collect indigenous poetry needs encouragement. Perhaps a criticism of this poetry as we have undertaken, might focus attention on it in schools and elsewhere and result in efforts to collect more. The work of all recorders has been a great service and should continue. This, coupled with more modern compositions, should add considerably to the bulk of Tswana poetry.
6.3.4 The tendency of modern poets to lack imagination and their poetry to lack imagery is to be deplored. A criticism such as we have tried might bring the stronger poets under focus and lead others to deeper insight.
6.3.5 Form and techniques have already been shown to influence each other. Lest many poets miss this point, we have highlighted the poets who have succeeded in furing the indigenous and the modern trends. This fusion is our most promising trend in Tswana poetry.

## SUTMARI

1. From findings of previous researchers two broad fields of study energe - the Bantu poetry without any Hestern Iuropean iniluence, and that which has signs of such influence. We referred to the former as indigenous and to the latter as modern poetry.
2. Mhirty to forty years ago researchers claimed that the indigenous 'praises' of the Zulu and the Tswana were poetry in the lestern European sense, even 'refined poetry', because of their spirit and language. Down the years Tswana critics such as P.P. Leseyane, A. Sandilands, N. Kitchin and J. Ntsine expressed themselves on Tswana poetry in retrospect and in prospect. Therehave been conscious growth and development, and we are of the opinion that the height of this development was the fusion of indigenous and modern techniques in the indige-nous-inodern work of Lekgetho, Kitchin and Kitchin (Boswa jwa Puo) and in the modern volune of L.D. Raditladi (Sefalana sa Menate).
3. Incigenous Iswana poetry divides into two broad prongs, that which alludes to history, whose subject is the vicissitudes of man's life, on the one hond, and that which deals with natural phenomena and cultural creations, on the other. We have therefore dealt with this aspect in two chapters entitled, Indigenous 'Poetry' other than historical, and, Indigenous 'Poems' with an Historical tenor and Indigenous 3ong. Indigenous poetry
is highly metaphorical. Often a whole poem at no stage refers by name to its subject, but by one metaphor after another, showing a high level of sustained inagery. It can also be fairly highly intellectual as found in the satires. In both respects indigenous poetry by rar excels modern poetry generally. Indigenous poetry also shows distinct tendencies to verse form, the verses sometines revealing equality in number of nodes, revealing also a likeness of nodes, susgesting a clear inclination to metre based on length of syllables. There is a latent idea of a stanza when the relationship between verse-data leading to a certain generalisation render the verse-data and generalisation into a thought-unit. Such thoughtunits at times float independently and get viewed as separate poems. To us this proves some consciousness of the concept of a stanza fom. Stanzas deal with aspects of a subject, and when the discourse is exhausted or stopped we have a poem. Poems may also be related by being aspects of a greater whole. We view this latter trend as a cycle. We found only one such cycle in Tswana. We believe there are more. The forms of Tswana poetry therefore, as we saw them, seem to be the metrical wordgroup or verse-node, the verse, the stanza, the poern and the cycle.
4. Generally modern poetry is still far less penetrating and imaginative. It is full of jingles and doggerels. With a few exceptions its verse-form inclines to the sentence form. There is a strong inclination to
rhyme (end-rhyme), but this is more often than not unsuccessiful. Exceptions are barcis that appear to have tried to learn from indigenous poetry as well as from Western Turopean poetry. The stanza form, as a thought-unit, seems to be consciously adhered to. It must still be developed as a unit of form, otherwise it is simply a paragraph.
5. Tswana has large stores of unwritten POEPRY awaiting field-workers. This recording has started and is growing. The strong points of indigenous poetry are its spirit, its imagery, its idealism, and its originality. The future of modern poetry, as we see it, hinces on the one hand on a penetration of the spirit and form of indigenous poetry, and a fair grasp of Western furopean poetry on the other. This tendency shows clearly and the possibilities of its growth are rather strong. The discovery of certain authors as leading poets is an indication of a tendency in the direction of this growth. 6. The translation of church hymns from European languages to Tswana has added the spirit of prophecy, in rairly good rhyme, in perfect rhythm, and in symatry to Tswana poetry. This contribution has given the growth of Tswana poetry a great impetus.
6. A more detailed study of the forms of Tswana poetry - metrical word-group, verse, stanza, poer, cycle and the content, and types of the Tswana epic, epigran, lyric, satire, ode, song and hymn, as well as mechanical
devices such as apostrophising, variation, inversion, ellipse, is certainly called for, and if this thesis helps focus attention on this task it will be considered a contribution.
7. We cannot subscribe wholly to the view that the employment of rhyme, metre, stanza-form, verseForm, is entirely atiributable to Western Duropean influences since these are present in sorne measure in traditional poetry. We admit this influence especially on the work of the nodernists, but the possibility is that that is not the sole source of what we have called the nodern tendency. See the case of M.G. Fokone (4.6.1-7) for instance.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

## I. References quoted

BBICOM:
Beeton, D.i.: $\frac{\text { Style }}{\text { No } \cdot 3, \text { February }}, \frac{\text { Truth }}{1965 \text {. }} \frac{\text { Standpunte }}{}, ~ V o l$. RVIII,
bibela:
Bibela e e Boitshèpò (Holy Bible), B.r.B.S., London, 1962.
以ULTOIG:
Boulton, Marjorie: The Anatomy of Poetry, Routledge $\&$ Kegan Paul, 1962.

BREURZ:
Breutz, P.-I.: The Pribes of Rustenburg and Pilansberg Districts, Ethnological Publications Io. टठ, Department of Native Affairs, S.A., Governant Frinter, 1953.

CIOETE 1953:
Cloete, T.T.: Op die Woord af, Nasou, 1963.
CLOUTE 1957:
Cloete, T.I.: Beskouings oor die Poësie, Van Schaik, 1957.

CODE:
Cope, Trevor: Izibongo: Zulu Praise-poems, Oxford Library of African Literature, Clarendon, 1968.

DU PLuSits:
du Plessis, P.G.: Die Verwysing in die Literatuur, Nas. Eoekhandel, 1968.

ELIOM:
Eliot, T.B.: On Poetry and Poets, Faber \& Faber, 1956.
GHDETKMT:
Endemann, Th.: Wat is Bantoe-Poësie? Bantu Education Joumal, Vol. 5, N0. 7, September 1959.

Giomberaid:
Groenewald, P.G.: Die Struktuur van die Verssisteem in die Ongeskrewe Toordkuns en in die Geskrewe Lettenkunde van Moord-Sotho, unpublished D. Litt. thesis, Pretoria University, 1966.

GROVS 1963:
Grovè, A.: Letterkundige Salwoordeboek van Aerikaans, Nasou, 1963.

GROVE 1962:
Grovè, A.P.: $\frac{\text { Woord en Wonder, }}{1962 .}$ nd impression, Nasou,
Ravey:
Harvey, C.J.D.: Language, Literature and Criticism, Commications of Unisa, 1 I9. 1961.

HOPLINS:
Hopkins, Kenneth: Enclish Poetry - A Short History, Phoenix Fouse, 1962.

JACTSON:
Jackson, F. $A . \frac{J u t a ' s \text { University } n g l i s h ~ C o u r s e, ~ J u t a ~}{\& C O}$ \& Co., 32nd edition, 1916.

GIPIING:
Kipling, Rudjard: The Definitive Edition of Rudyard KipTing's Verse, Hodder \& Houghton, 1966

IAYDEVAMT:
Laydevant, Fr. F.: The Praises of the Divining Bones among the Basotho, Bantu Studies, December, 1933 .

IUETGOTECANT:
Lekgothoane, J.K.: Praises of Animals in North Sotho, Bantu Studies, September 1938.

ITESEMANE:
Leseyane, P.i.: Letihaku le legologolo, Van Schaik, 1963.

LeGTRADE 1935:
Lestrade, G.P.: Bantu Praise-poems, The Critic, Vol. IV, NO. I, 1935

THMRDE 1962
Lestrade, G.P.: Iraditional Iiterature in Schapera's Bantu-speaking Tribes of Bouth Africa, Maskew Minler, 1962.

LIFII:
Limi, Bulletin of the Department of Bantu Languages, Unisa, No. 6, June, 1968.

Mamonema:

MELíatu:
Nelam, H.J.: $\frac{\text { A Study of Motive in the Satiric Poetry }}{0 \text { John Skelton, unpublished }}$ sertation, Unisa, 1965.

MOLIH:
Molena, S.M.: Montshiwa, Barolong Chief and Patriot, Struik (Pty.) Ltd., 1966.

MOLOI:
I'foloi, A.J.: A Comparative Study of the Poetry of Ntsane and Khaketla, unpublished M.A. dissertation, Unisa, 1968.

HOLOTO:
Fifoloto, S.S.: A Critical Investigation into the Standardization of Written Iswana, unpublished li.A. dissertation, Unisa, 1964.

CLMELS:
Orwell, George: Animal Farm (a Satire), Longmans, 1965.

RICA $3 D S$ :
Richards, I.A.: Principles of Iiterary Criticism, Routledge \& Kegan Paul, 1962.

SAIMTSBURI:
Saintsbury, George: Historical Manual of English Prosody, Schocken Books, N.Y., 1966.

SGiPILITDS:
Bandilands, $A$. in the introduction to Boswa jwa Puo by Lekgetho, Kitchin \& Kitchin, Lobatsi, 1949.

SCHAPERA:
Schapera, I.: Praise-poems of Tswana Chiers, Oxford Libiary of African Literature, 1965.

SCHONEES \& V. BRUGGZT:
Schonees, P.C. \& Van Bruggen, J.R.I.: Inleiding tot die Studie van Letterkunde, Dusseau要Co., 1937.

SEBONI:
Seboni, M.O.M.: Diane le Maele a Setswana. Iovedale,
SHAKPSPEARE:
Shakespeare, W.: Craig's Complete Works of, Humphrey
THOMAS:
Thomas, Roy: How to read a Poem, London Univ. Press,

Tigerkloor Magazine, No. 16, 1934.

VATM DER MERTE:
Van der Merwe, D.F.: Hurutshe Poems, Bantu Studies, December 1941.

VAD DER NALT:
Van der Walt, P.D.: Versavontuur, Nas. Boelkhandel,
1968.
VMPTER, HLZRTZOG:
Venter, Hertzog: Vers en Sin in Beskouings oor Poësie, ed. T.T. Cloete, Van Schaik, 1957.
VITMTARI:
Vilakazi, B.W.: The Conception and Development of Poetry in Zulu, Bantu Studies, Vol.12, I938.

VILJOEN:
Viljoen, G. van ir: Die Antieke Digter oor sy Digproses, in Die Digter oor sy Digproses, Connunications of Unisa, B 15, 1961.

TAIBA:
Wanba magazine, January 1967.
TATRTOCK:
Whittock, Prevor: An Essay on Poetic Diction, Communications of Unisa, C 14, 1959

WOKEX:
Wookey, A.J.: Dicò tsa Secwana, Tigerkloof, 1938.
II. Indigenous Poetry recorded and published by Farly

KGASI:
Rgasi, Micha: Thuto ke eng? Lovedale, 1939.
LESEYANE:
Leseyane, P.P.: Buka ya go buisa $V$ \& VI, Van Schaik, 1938.
III. Indigenous Poetry and modern compositions recorded side by side in bchool Readers

Imserane;
Leseyane, P.P.: Buka ya go buisa III, Van Schaik, 194-3.
IOLKONE:
Mokone. N.G.: Montsanaisabosigo wa Boraro, Juta \& Co., 1963 edition.
IV. Publications of Volumes of indigenous poetry and modern compositions side by side

LTRGZTHO, NITCHID \& KITCHIT:
Jekgetho, Kitchin \& Kitchin: Boswa jwa Puo, Lobatsi, 1949.

MAPOYITE:
Hafoyane, 3. S.: Moretlo, Via Afrika, fourth impression, 1963

GEBOMI:
Seboni, M.O.R.: Mabôkô, Malôba le Maabane, Via Aririca, 1949
V. Publications of Volumes of Piodern Poetry

MORCKE:
Moroke, 今.A.: Matšhotiho, Bona Pres, 19..
HOTLHASEDI:
Mothasedi, G.C. ${ }^{\text {Moepatshipi }}$ ga a bone, Van Schaik,
RDIMLADI:
Raditladi, L.D.: Sefalana sa Fenate, A.P.B., 19..
VI. Drama referred to in text

MTSIN 1965:
Ntsine, J.M.: Pelo e ja Serati, Via Afrika, 1965.
NT SIME 1968:
Ntsine, J.M.: Fobo e Ntsho, Via Afrika, 1968
RADITLADI 1954:
Raditladi, L.D.: Motswasele II, Vits. Univ. Press, 1954.

RGOTTLED 1968:
Raditladi, I.D.: Macbeth (translation), Bona Press,
VII. Hymaries

BUKA YA MERAPETO:
Buza Ya Merapêlô, Ditirêlô le Difela tsa Kereke ya Methodiste ya South Africa, Methodist Publishing House, 1953.

```
DIEELA
Dihela tsa Tihèlo ea Modimo di na le Dipina tsa Cöna
                        mo Puon ea Secwana by A.J. Wookey,
                        nineteenth impression, 1951, Botswana
                        Book Centre.
ROBAMTA:
Hosanna - Difela tsa Mederduitse Gereformeerde Kerk in
    Arrika mo Puong ya Setswana, J. G.
    Sendinguitgewers, 1967.
SICNE:
Sione yo o ôpêlang, ké go re Difela kaga Ditirô tsa
    Modimo kafa temalons ya Kerékê ya
    Iutheré, Xist impression, Herminnsburs
    Mission Press, 1958.
VIII. Other works relied upon but not quoted
BWCBMA:
Blackmur, R.P.: Porm and Value in Modern Poetry,
    Doubleday Anchor Books, I95? ed.
BGOOKS, CLSAMTE \& WRRRT,
Brooks, Cleanth \& Tarren, Robert Penn: Understanding
    Poetry, third edition, Holt, Rinehart
    \& Inston, 1960
COETZEE:
Coetzee, P.C.: \(\frac{\text { Gids by die Voorbereiding van }}{\frac{\text { Skaplike Geskifiten FubIikasies }}{\text { Gniversiteit Pretoria, No. }} .}\)
COTE-BEUCHAT:
Cole-Beuchat, P.D.: Riddles in Bantu (iynopsis),
    African Studies, Vol. 16, No. 3, 1957.
DEMER:
Dekker, G.: Afrikaanse Literatuurgeskiedenis, Tasou, 1953.
RERRIRA:
Terreira, J.E.: Bestrywingsprobleme in die Bantoetaalkunde, Publikasies v.d. Kandse Atrikaanse Universiteit, AII, 1969.
GRUVES, HODGE:
Graves, R. \& Hodge: The Reader over your Shoulder, Jonathen Cape, 1965.
GROENBMDT:
Groenewald, P.S.: Die Studie v.d. Letterkunde in die Bantoetale, Publikasies v.d. UniversiEeit Pretoria, nr. 42, 1967.
```

GROVE:
Grovè, A.F.: Die Soek na Kriteria, Publikasies v. . Tniversiteit Pretoria, nr. 19, 1962.

GULL:
Gura, If.S.: The Porm, Content and Technique of $\frac{\text { Traditional Literature in Southern }}{\text { Sotho, J.J. van Schaik, } 1967}$

TRIGQ, UYS:
Krige, Uys, Vooraand, A.P.B., 1964.
MISTSBER:
Nienaber, P.J.: Digters en Digkuns, vyfde druk, A.P.B., 1960.

NTSATIISI:
Ntsanmisi, H. W.E.: The Idiom in Tsonga - A Descriptive Study, unpublished M.A. thesis, Unisa, 1965.

NYPMBEZI:
Myembezi, C.L.S.: Zulu Proverbs, Jits. University Press, 1954.
CPPERMEN:
Cpperman, D.J.: Digters van Dertis, Nasionale Boekhandel, 1953.

PAROZ:
Paroz, R.A.: Southern Sotho Dictionary, Morija, 1965
POSmivedos:
Posthumus, I.J.: Die takk Van die Taalkundige in Suid-Afrika, mededelings van die Universitoit van suid-ifrika, $133,1964$.

READ \& DOBREE:
Read \& Dobree: The London Book of Znglish Verse, Wyre 6 Spottiswoode, second revised edition, 1952.

RICHARDS:
Richards, I.A.: Practical Criticism, Routledse \& Kegan Paur, 1929.

ROLSNTCK:
Rollnick, Julian: Problems of classifying Literature on the Bantu, Bantu Studies, June IgKi.

SCRAPER:
Schapera, I.: The Tswana (Ethnographic Burvey of Arica, Part III ed Daryll Porde,

SCOMT-JAMES:
Bcott-James, R.A.: The Making of Ifterature, Mercury Books, 1963.

SiITNS:
Bmes, M. J.: Iian, liyth and Muse (An examination of some functions of the poetic faculty), Ukon Papers, no. 9, 1962.

VAT DER MERGE:
Van der Merve, H.J.J.: Studierigtings in die Taalkunde, $\sqrt{a n}$ Schaik, 1964 .

VAN ZYL:
Van Zyl, H.J.: Praises in Northern Sotho, Bantu Studies, June, 1941.


[^0]:    * The Trend of Setswona Poetry is unobtcinable. The authof, one time High School Principul, is now Minister of Education fin Botswana.

[^1]:    * Accoidinc to ri. or. Beboni, Diane le fiaele a Setevena, lovedale, $1962, \mathrm{p} \cdot 2$, this proverb means that men are liars. Oup tranclation above is based on the biblical. use of the word thwadi in Daniel 6 where Danjel was apapointed primarius of the three presidents who supervised "an hundred and twenty princes" because, "f ma thwadi mo balaoding le dikgosana..."" he was supertor to the presidents and princes?. Evidently men are not necessarily stronger against cold - so says magaziga (lit. mother of winter) - therefore not necessarily superiot.

[^2]:    * An axis is one nember of the balanced parts of a verse.

[^3]:    * The iomieng aiver foms a valler betweon two nown tains, therefore a concavity.

[^4]:    * Hiane of another kind of grasshopper.

[^5]:    * People gather when a goat is to be slaughtered Simi-

[^6]:    * I. Schapera uses the term 'initiand' in Praise-poems of Tswana Chiefs (op. cit.) p. 3 line 6 for instance

[^7]:    I ellipse

[^8]:    *This term (alternant 'Cretic') is used by Marjorie Boulton in The Anatomy of Verse (op. cit.) p. 24, line 10 from bottom.

[^9]:    * Kilarnolelo, lit. fire-hater

[^10]:    * Cf. M.S. Kitchin's Mahumapelo a ga Phokoje, lines 1-4. of the first stanea, translated thus:
    Indeed were there a telephone connection with heaven I would report to the Creator, that He hear, and help, and warn man; we are perishing because of man and his $\operatorname{dog}]$
    in Boswa jwa puo (op. cit.)

